

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

PROJECT MANUAL

**North Myrtle Beach Middle School  
HVAC Replacement**

**WBS Project Number: 23090001**

11240 SC-90,  
Little River, South Carolina 29566

PREPARED BY:

**WHOLE BUILDING SYSTEMS, LLC**

P.O. Box 1845  
Mt Pleasant, SC 29465

Date: February 16, 2024

**NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT**

**HORRY COUNTY SCHOOL DISTRICT –NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE  
SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT**

**SECTION 000102**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION 00 PROCUREMENT and CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

**SECTION # TITLE**

SECTION 000101 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE  
SECTION 000102 - TABLE OF CONTENTS  
SECTION 000107 - SEALS PAGE  
SECTION 000115 - LIST OF DRAWINGS  
STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

**DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY  
SECTION 012100 – ALLOWANCES  
SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES  
SECTION 013100 – PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION  
SECTION 017300 – EXECUTION  
SECTION 017419 – CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL  
SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
SECTION 017823 - OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
SECTION 017900 – DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

**DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

SECTION 050520 – POST INSTALLED STRUCTURAL ANCHORS  
SECTION 051200 – STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  
SECTION 055000 – METAL FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

SECTION 061007 – ROOF ROUGH CARPENTRY

## **DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

SECTION 075216 – STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MOD BIT MEMBRANE  
ROOF

SECTION 075423 – ROOFING REPAIRS FOR NEW CURBS

SECTION 076200.02 – SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

SECTION 077200 – ROOF ACCESSORIES

SECTION 078413 – PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

## **DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

SECTION 092900 – GYPSUM BOARD

SECTION 095123 – ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS REINSTALLATION OF REMOVED  
SYSTEMS

SECTION 099124 – INTERIOR PAINTING

## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

SECTION 112429.03 – FACILITY FALL PROTECTION, NON-PENETRATING

## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

NOT APPLICABLE

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## **DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

SECTION 230130.52 – EXISTING HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING  
SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230517 – SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING  
SECTION 230518 – ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING  
SECTION 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC  
SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION  
SECTION 230719 – HVAC PIPING INSULATION  
SECTION 230923 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROLS (DDC) SYSTEMS  
SECTION 231126 – FACILITY LIQUIFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING  
SECTION 232300 – REFRIGERANT PIPING  
SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS  
SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
SECTION 233346 – FLEXIBLE DUCTS  
SECTION 237413 – DEDICATED OUTDOOR PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY  
UNITS  
SECTION 237414 – SINGLE PACKAGE ROOF MOUNTED HEAT PUMPS WITH HGR  
SECTION 237415 – SINGLE PACKAGE ROOF MOUNTED HEAT PUMPS  
SECTION 237433 – DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS  
SECTION 238126 – SPLIT SYSTEM HEAT PUMPS

## **DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND  
CABLES  
SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

## **DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

NOT APPLICABLE

## **DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

NOT APPLICABLE

**NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT**

**DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 34 - TRANSPORTATION**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 35 - WATERWAY AND MARINE CONSTRUCTION**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 40 - PROCESS INTEGRATION**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 41 - MATERIAL PROCESSING AND HANDLING EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 42 - PROCESS HEATING, COOLING, AND DRYING EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 43 - PROCESS GAS AND LIQUID HANDLING, PURIFICATION AND  
STORAGE EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 44 - POLLUTION CONTROL EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 45 - INDUSTRY-SPECIFIC MANUFACTURING EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 46 - WATER AND WASTEWATER EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 48 - ELECTRICAL POWER GENERATION**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 99 - NARRATIVES**

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

END OF SECTION

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

**DOCUMENT 000107 - SEALS PAGE**



Date: FEBRUARY 16, 2024

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## DOCUMENT 000115 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

### 1.1 LIST OF DRAWINGS

- A. List of Drawings: Drawings consist of the following Contract Drawings and other drawings of type indicated:
1. G001 - TITLE PAGE
  2. G002 – LIFE SAFETY PLAN
  3. A101 – DEMO AND NEW REFLECTIVE CEILING PLAN AREA A
  4. A102 - DEMO AND NEW REFLECTIVE CEILING PLAN AREA B
  5. A103 - DEMO AND NEW REFLECTIVE CEILING PLAN AREA D
  6. A104 - DEMO AND NEW REFLECTIVE CEILING PLAN AREA C
  7. A105 - DEMO AND NEW REFLECTIVE CEILING PLAN AREA E
  8. AR101- DEMOLITION ROOF PLAN
  9. A501 - ROOF DETAILS
  10. S000 - STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES
  11. S102 - STRUCTURAL FULL ROOF FRAMING PLAN
  12. S103 - STRUCTURAL PARTIAL ‘A’ ROOF FRAMING PLAN
  13. S104 - STRUCTURAL PARTIAL ‘B’ ROOF FRAMING PLAN
  14. S105 - STRUCTURAL PARTIAL ‘C’ ROOF FRAMING PLAN
  15. S106 - STRUCTURAL PARTIAL ‘E’ ROOF FRAMING PLAN
  16. S107 - STRUCTURAL PARTIAL ADDITION ROOF FRAMING
  17. S201 – STRUCTURAL TYPICAL HVAC SUPPORT STEEL ON STEEL DECK DETAILS
  18. S202 – STRUCTURAL TYPICAL HVAC SUPPORT STEEL ON DECK DETAILS
  19. S301 – STRUCTURAL SECTIONS & DETAILS
  20. S302 – STRUCTURAL SECTIONS & DETAILS
  21. M001 - HVAC LEGEND, NOTES, AND ABBREVIATIONS
  22. MD101 – HVAC DEMO FLOOR PLAN A
  23. MD102 – HVAC DEMO FLOOR PLAN B
  24. MD103 – HVAC DEMO FLOOR PLAN D
  25. MD104 – HVAC DEMO FLOOR PLAN C
  26. MD105 – HVAC DEMO FLOOR PLAN E
  27. MD106 – HVAC DEMO PARTIAL ROOF PLAN
  28. MD107 – HVAC DEMO PARTIAL ROOF PLAN
  29. M101 – HVAC NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN A
  30. M102 – HVAC NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN B
  31. M103 – HVAC NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN D
  32. M104 – HVAC NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN C
  33. M105 – HVAC NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN E
  34. M106 – HVAC NEW WORK PARTIAL ROOF PLAN
  35. M107 – HVAC NEW WORK PARTIAL ROOF PLAN
  36. M500 - HVAC DETAILS
  37. M501 - HVAC DETAILS
  38. M600 – SCHEDULES
  39. M700 – SEQUENCE OF OPERATION
  40. M701 – SEQUENCE OF OPERATION
  41. M702 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATION
  42. E001 - ELECTRICAL LEGEND, NOTES AND ABBREVIATIONS
  43. ED101 – ELECTRICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN A



NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 44. ED102 – ELECTRICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN B
- 45. ED103 – ELECTRICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN D
- 46. ED104 – ELECTRICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN C
- 47. ED105 – ELECTRICAL DEMO FLOOR PLAN E
- 48. E101 – ELECTRICAL NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN A
- 49. E102 – ELECTRICAL NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN B
- 50. E103 – ELECTRICAL NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN D
- 51. E104 – ELECTRICAL NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN C
- 52. E105 – ELECTRICAL NEW WORK FLOOR PLAN E
- 53. E600 - ELECTRICAL SCHEDULE

END OF DOCUMENT 000115

# Statement of Special Inspections

Project: North Myrtle Beach Middle School HVAC Permit Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Location: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner/Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City \_\_\_\_\_ Zip \_\_\_\_\_

Registered Design Professional  
In Responsible Charge: Christopher Gilger, PE

Address: 1226 Yeamans Hall Rd

City: Hanahan State: SC Zip: 29410 Phone: 843-566-0161

E-mail: chrisg@adcengineering.com

This statement of Special Inspections attached is submitted as a condition for permit issuance in accordance with Section 1704 of the 2018 International Building Code. It includes a Schedule of Special Inspection Services applicable to the above referenced project as well as the identity of the individuals, agencies, or firms (completed by others) intended to be retained for conducting these inspections. The Special Inspection Coordinator (Registered Design Professional In Charge of Administering Special Inspections) shall keep records of all inspections and shall furnish interim inspection reports to the Engineer of Record (Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge of Construction Documents) at a frequency agreed upon by the permit applicant and Building Official prior to the start of work. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor and the Engineer of Record for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the Special Inspection Coordinator shall bring the discrepancies to the attention of the Building Official and the Engineer of Record prior to the completion of that phase of work. The Special Inspection Coordinator shall submit a Final Report of Special Inspections to the building official at the conclusion of the project and before a certificate of occupancy will be issued.

Statement of Special Inspections encompass the following disciplines:

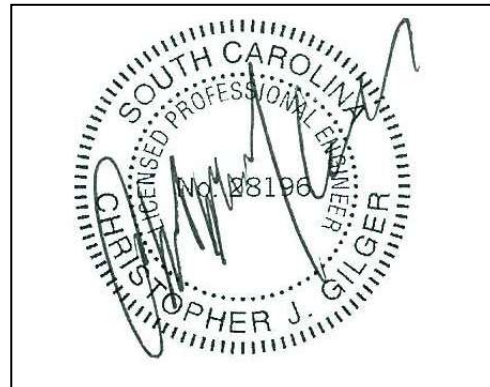
- Structural  Mechanical/Electrical/Plumbing  
 Architectural  Other: \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared by:

Christopher Gilger, PE  
Type or Print Name

  
Signature

February 16, 2024  
Date



Preparer's Seal and Signature Required

To be filled out by the jurisdiction and returned to applicant  
Building Official's Acceptance of Special Inspections

Frequency of Interim reports: Monthly  Bi-Monthly  Upon Completion  Per Attached Schedule

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_ TMS \_\_\_\_\_ Permit Number \_\_\_\_\_

# Schedule of Inspection and Testing Agencies

---

This Statement of Special Inspections includes the following building systems:

- |                                                            |                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Soils and Foundations             | <input type="checkbox"/> Wood Construction                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cast-in-Place Concrete | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Architectural Components |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Precast Concrete                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Mechanical & Electrical Systems     |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Masonry                | <input type="checkbox"/> Storage Racks                       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Structural Steel       | <input type="checkbox"/> Spray Fire Resistant Material       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cold-Formed Steel Framing         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Special Cases            |

Special Inspection Agencies	Firm	Address, Telephone, e-mail
1. <b>Special Inspection Coordinator (Registered Professional in Responsible Charge of Administering Special Inspections)</b>		
2. Inspector		
3. Inspector		
4. Testing Agency		
5. Testing Agency		
6. Other		

Note: The inspectors and testing agencies shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official, prior to commencing work.

# **Qualifications of Inspectors and Testing Technicians**

---

The qualifications of all personnel performing Special Inspection and testing activities are subject to the approval of the Building Official and shall be in accordance with the building code or any particular requirements of the specifications or material specific referenced standards. The credentials of all Inspectors and testing technicians shall be provided if requested.

## **Special Inspection Definitions**

---

**Continuous Special Inspection** - Special inspection by the special inspector who is present when and where the work to be inspected is being performed.

**Periodic Special Inspection** - Special inspection by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed. Unless noted otherwise 100% of the work designated for inspection shall be inspected.

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.1.1 Special Cases</b>	
<b>Post Installed Anchors</b>	
Installer Qualifications	<b>Review</b> installer training records to confirm they have received manufacturer training per the contract documents
Anchor Installation	<p><b>Continuously</b> inspect complete process of anchor installation in accordance with requirements of approved ICC ESR report. As minimum review installation procedures including drill bit type, drilling methods, hole preparation and cleaning, spacing, edge distance, embedment depth, adhesive installation, rod installation, curing time, and anchor torque to ensure compliance with manufacturer's instructions and construction documents.</p> <p><b>(All anchor holes must be inspected during drilling, all anchor holes must be inspected prior to anchor installation, all anchors shall be inspected at final application of required torque)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.2.1 Structural Steel</b>	
Review fabricator's source quality assurance inspection and testing report submittals	<p><b>Periodically</b> review fabricator's source quality assurance inspection and test reports to ensure all inspection and testing is being completed as required and appropriate standards are being met.  <b>(100% rate for all source quality control report submittals.)</b></p>
Conduct Inspections prior to field welding in accordance with AISC 360 Table N5.4-1	<p><b>Periodically</b> confirm welder qualification records and continuity records are current</p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that welding procedure specifications (WPS) are available and on site for type and configuration of weld being completed.  <b>(100% rate for each type and configuration of weld immediately prior to the weld being completed)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm manufacturers certifications are available and on site for all welding consumables.  <b>(100% rate for each type of consumable immediately prior to initial use of each consumable)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect material identification (type/grade)</p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that a welder identification system is in place for field welding and that the system is being used  <b>(confirm system is in place prior to welding and 100% confirmation of system usage during welding inspection)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect configuration and finish of weld access holes  <b>(100% inspection rate of all weld access holes immediately prior to completing associated weld)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect fit-up of fillet welds including dimensions, cleanliness, and tacking  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during steel erection)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.2.1 Structural Steel (Continued)</b>	
<p>Conduct inspections during field welding in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.4-2</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that welders are qualified for welds which they are completing and they possess a valid welding certificate for that weld type and configuration  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect control and handling of welding consumables including packaging and exposure control.  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that no welding is occurring over cracked tack welds.  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that environmental conditions are acceptable including wind speed limits, precipitation and temperature.  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> confirm that weld procedure specifications (WPS's) are being followed including settlings of welding equipment, travel speed, selected welding materials, shielding gas type and flow rate, preheat applied, interpass temperature maintained, and proper position.  <b>(Continuously inspect for groove welds, multi-pass welds, or welds greater than 5/16". Periodically inspect all other welds a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> confirm welding techniques including interpass and final cleaning, each pass with profile limitations, each pass meets quality requirements.  <b>(Continuously inspect for groove welds, multi-pass welds, or welds greater than 5/16". Periodically inspect all other welds a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect placement and installation of steel headed stud anchors.  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once daily during welding operations)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.2.1 Structural Steel (Continued)</b>	
<p>Conduct inspections after field welding in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.4-3</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> confirm that welds have been cleaned. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm weld size, length and location. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm weld meets visual acceptance criteria including crack prohibition, weld/base-metal fusion, crater cross section, weld profiles, weld size, undercut, and porosity. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect arc strikes. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect k-area for cracks within 3" of welds when welding has been performed in k-area. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm backing and weld tabs have been removed where required. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p>
<p>(Continued) Conduct inspections after field welding in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.4-3</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect repair activities. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> document acceptance or rejection of welded joint or member. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect no prohibited welds have been added without the approval of the EOR. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p>



MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.2.1 Structural Steel (Continued)</b>	
<p>Conduct Inspections prior to high strength bolting in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.6-1</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> confirm manufacturers certifications are available each type of fastener material. <b>(100% rate for each type of fastener material immediately prior to initial use of each type of material)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm fasteners are marked in accordance with ASTM Standard. <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during bolting operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm correct fasteners are selected for the joint detail including grade, type, and bolt length (if threads are to be excluded from shear plane). <b>(100% inspection rate)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> confirm correct bolting procedure selected for joint detail. <b>(100% inspection rate, continuous inspection for slip critical joints, periodic inspection for all other joints with random inspection with a minimum rate of once weekly during bolting operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> inspect connection elements, including appropriate faying surface condition and hole preparation meet applicable requirements. <b>(continuous inspection for slip critical joints with 100% inspection rate, periodic inspection for all other joints with random inspection with a minimum rate of once weekly during bolting operations)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> Conduct Preinstallation verification testing by installation personnel and document for fastener assemblies and methods used for slip critical joints. <b>(Periodically, one time per installer for turn of nut, direct tension indicators, or tension controlled bolts. Periodically, once daily for calibrated wrench without match marking)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> confirm protected storage provided for bolts, nuts, washers and other fastener components. <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during bolting operations)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.2.1 Structural Steel (Continued)</b>	
<p>Conduct Inspections during high strength bolting in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.6-2</p>	<p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> confirm fastener assemblies placed in all holes and washers are positioned as required.  <b>(100% inspection rate, continuous inspection for slip critical joints, periodic inspection for all other joints with random inspection with a minimum rate of once weekly during bolting operations)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> confirm joints are brought to the snug-tight condition prior to pretensioning operation  <b>(100% inspection rate, continuous inspection for slip critical joints)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> component not turned by the wrench is prevented from rotating  <b>(100% inspection rate, continuous inspection for slip critical joints)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically/Continuously</b> confirm fasteners are pretensioned in accordance with the RCSC Specification, progressing systematically from the most rigid point toward the free edges  <b>(100% inspection rate, continuous inspection for slip critical joints pretensioned with calibrated wrench or turn-of-the-nut without match marking. Periodic inspection for slip critical joints pretensioned with tension controlled bolts, direct tension indicators, or turn-of-the-nut with match marking)</b></p>
<p>Conduct Inspections after high strength bolting in accordance with AISC 360-10 Table N5.6-3</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> document acceptance or rejection of bolted connections.  <b>(100% rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during welding operations)</b></p>
<p>Other inspection Task</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect placement of anchor rods and other embedded items prior to concrete/masonry grout placement operations. Confirm diameter, grade, type and length of the anchor rod or embedded item, and the extent or depth of embedment into concrete/masonry grout.  <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to concrete/masonry grout placement operation)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the steel frame to verify compliance with the details shown on the construction documents including braces, stiffeners, member locations, and proper application of joint details at each connection.  <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum rate of once weekly during steel erection operations)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.3 Concrete Construction</b>	
Inspection of reinforcing steel, including prestressing tendons, and placement	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect reinforcing steel placement in accordance with contract documents and approved shop drawings to confirm size, spacing, cover, positioning, bends, grade, laps, supports and anchorage.  <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to placing concrete)</b></p>
Reinforcing bar welding	<p><b>Periodically</b> verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706.  <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to placing concrete)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum 5/16"  (AWS D1.4, ACI 318: 26.6.4  <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to placing concrete)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> inspect all other welds.  <b>(100% inspection rate during concrete placement)</b></p>
Inspection of anchors cast in concrete	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect size, positioning, embedment, and projection of anchor rods is in accordance with contract documents and approved shop drawings.  <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to placing concrete)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> inspect concrete placement and consolidation around anchors.  <b>(100% inspection rate during concrete placement)</b></p>
Inspection of anchors post-installed in hardened concrete members.	<p><b>Review</b> installer training records to confirm they have received manufacturer training per the contract documents</p> <p><b>Continuously</b> inspect complete process of anchor installation in accordance with requirements of approved ICC ESR report. As minimum review installation procedures including drill bit type, drilling methods, hole preparation and cleaning, spacing, edge distance, embedment depth, adhesive installation, rod installation, curing time, and anchor torque to ensure compliance with manufacturer's instructions and construction documents.  <b>(All anchor holes must be inspected during drilling, all anchor holes must be inspected prior to anchor installation, all anchors shall be inspected at final application of required torque)</b></p>
Verifying use of required design mix	<p><b>Periodically</b> review batch tickets to confirm the appropriate approved mix design is being used for the location in which concrete is being placed  <b>(100% review rate during concrete placement)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> verify that water added at the site does not exceed that allowed by the batch ticket  <b>(100% inspection rate during concrete placement)</b></p>

### 1705.3 Concrete Construction (Continued)

<p>Sample fresh concrete to fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform fresh unit weight density, slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of concrete</p>	<p><b>Continuously</b> test concrete compressive strength (ASTM C31 &amp; C39), fresh unit weight density (ASTM C138), slump (ASTM C143), air-content (ASTM C231 or C173) and temperature (ASTM C1064).</p> <p>Samples for preparing unit weight density specimens and measuring air content shall be obtained at the point of placement.</p> <p>Slump measurements are for reference only and shall not be a basis of rejection.</p> <p>Threshold for fresh unit weight density shall be in accordance with approved mix design submittals</p> <p><b>(Frequency of sampling and testing as required by section 21.16 of ACI 318)</b></p>
<p>Inspection of concrete for proper application techniques</p>	<p><b>Continuously</b> inspect concrete placement techniques to confirm compliance with section 26.5 of ACI 318.</p>
<p>Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperatures and techniques</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect curing temperatures and techniques to insure compliance with contract documents and sections 26.5.3, 26.5.4 and 26.5.5 of ACI 318-14</p>
<p>Verification of in-situ concrete strength prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> verify in-situ strength of concrete prior to stressing and/or form removal. Compare tested strength with required strengths specified on contract documents, shop drawings and/or delegated design submittals  <b>(Verify immediately prior to each stressing and/or formwork removal activity)</b></p>
<p>Inspection of formwork for shape, location and dimensions of concrete member being formed</p>	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect formwork to ensure compliance with dimensions of members indicated on contract documents  <b>(100% inspection rate during concrete placement)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.4 Masonry Construction</b>	
Verify compliance with approved submittals	<p><b>Periodically</b> review batch tickets to confirm the appropriate approved grout mix design is being used. <b>(100% review rate during grout placement)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> review mortar materials to confirm compliance with approved submittals. <b>(A minimum of once weekly during masonry construction)</b></p>
Verify proportions of site prepared mortar	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect proportioning, mixing and re-tempering of mortar. <b>(A minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p>
Inspect construction of mortar joints	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect construction of mortar joints including tooling and filling of head joints. <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p>
Inspect location of reinforcement and connectors	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect placement, positioning and lapping of reinforcing steel <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect size, grade and type of reinforcing. <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> inspect placement positioning and lapping of joint reinforcement. <b>(100% Inspection rate – inspector shall be in the area of masonry work to monitor installation)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect size, grade, type and location of anchor rods and embeds. <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p>
Inspect Grout Space	<p><b>Periodically</b> grout spaces to ensure minimum clear grout spaces are achieved, and that grout spaces are free from debris, mortar fins and mortar droppings. Confirm mortar fins and mortar droppings are being manually removed as masonry is constructed. <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p>
Verify proportions of site prepared grout	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect proportioning, mixing and re-tempering of mortar. <b>(A minimum of once daily during masonry construction)</b></p>
Proportions of site prepared grout	<p><b>Continuously</b> inspect proportioning and mixing of site batched grout. Confirm acceptable measurement devices are being employed and that the mix proportions are in accordance with approved submittals.</p>
Verify size and location of structural masonry elements	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the size and location of structural elements to comply with contract drawings. <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during applicable portion of the work)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.4 Masonry Construction (Continued)</b>	
Verify protection of masonry during hot/cold weather	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect protection of masonry during cold weather (temperature below 40 deg F) or hot weather (temperature above 90 deg F)</p> <p><b>Periodically</b> verify that all wall cavities are protected against precipitation.  <b>(100% inspection rate a minimum of once daily during applicable portion of the work)</b></p>
Verify grout placement complies with code and construction document provisions	<p><b>Continuously</b> inspect placement, consolidation and reconsolidation of grout.  <b>(100% inspection rate)</b></p> <p><b>Continuously</b> verify grouting and grout consolidation procedures are in accordance with code and contract document provisions.  <b>(100% inspection rate)</b></p>
Evaluation of grout Strength	<p><b>Continuously</b> Test compressive strength of grout samples (ASTM C1019).  <b>(Sample and test grout for every 5000 sq ft. of wall, but not less than one set of samples for each day's worth of grouting)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.6 Soils</b>	
Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity	<b>Periodically</b> inspect soils within building footprint for adequate bearing capacity and consistency with the geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate)</b>
Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material	<b>Periodically</b> inspect all footing excavations to ensure they are to proper depth and have reached proper material as indicated on contract documents and/or geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate immediately prior to placement to reinforcing steel for foundations)</b>  <b>Periodically</b> inspect all unsuitable material excavations to ensure they are to proper depth and have reached proper material as indicated on contract documents and/or geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate of all areas of unsuitable fill removal immediately prior to placement of fill)</b>
Perform classification testing of compacted fill materials.	<b>Periodically</b> perform testing of fill materials to ensure compliance with contract documents and geotechnical report. Classification and testing shall be in accordance with the Geotechnical report. Where the geotechnical report does not specifically indicate testing, the minimum testing shall be sieve tests (ASTM D422 & D1140) and Standard Proctor tests (ASTM D98). <b>(Testing shall be completed for each source of material, or where obvious changes of properties of fill materials are realized)</b>
Verify use of proper materials, densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill	<b>Continuously</b> verify materials for compacted fill to ensure materials have been previously tested and are in compliance with the contract documents and geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate)</b>  <b>Periodically</b> test density of each lift of fill within the building footprint to confirm compliance with compaction requirements outlined in the contract documents and geotechnical report. <b>(Where inspection rates are not indicated in the geotechnical report, not less than one test per each lift per 2000 sq ft of fill placed)</b>  <b>Continuously</b> verify lift thicknesses are during placement of compacted fill to ensure lift thickness is in compliance with the contract documents and geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate)</b>
Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that the site has been prepared properly.	<b>Periodically</b> inspect subgrade within the building footprint prior to placement of compacted fill to ensure subgrade complies with contract documents and geotechnical report. <b>(100% inspection rate of all areas immediately prior to placement of fill)</b>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.11 Special Inspections for Wind Resistance</b>	
1705.11.3 Wind Resisting Components	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the installation of Roof Cladding is in accordance with approved submittals and manufacturer's installation requirements  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during roof cladding installation)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the installation of Wall Cladding is in accordance with approved submittals and manufacturer's installation requirements  <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during wall cladding installation)</b></p>



MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.12 Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance</b>	
1705.12.1 Structural Steel (Seismic Force Resisting System)	<p><b>Periodically</b> review fabricator's source quality assurance inspection and test reports to ensure all inspection and testing is being completed as required and appropriate standards are being met. <b>(100% rate for all source quality control report submittals.)</b></p> <p>Special inspector shall submit a written quality assurance plan for field inspection in accordance with AISC 341-16 Chapter J3</p> <p>Inspect field welding of Seismic Force Resisting System Weld Inspection in accordance with AISC 341-16 item J6</p> <p>Inspect field bolting of Seismic Force Resisting System Bolting Inspection in accordance with AISC 341-16 item J7</p> <p>Inspect other steel structure items in accordance with AISC 341-16 item J8</p> <p>Inspect field construction of composite structures in accordance with AISC 341-16 item J9</p> <p>Inspect field fabrication of steel piles in accordance with AISC 341-16 item J10</p>
1705.12.5 Architectural Components	<p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the erection and fastening of exterior wall cladding to ensure compliance with specifications, approved submittals and manufacturer's installation requirements. <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of once weekly during cladding installation)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect the erection and fastening of interior and exterior veneers to ensure compliance with specifications, approved submittals and manufacturer's installation requirements. <b>(Random inspection rate for general conformance with a minimum rate of twice weekly during cladding installation)</b></p> <p><b>Periodically</b> inspect installation of interior and exterior nonbearing walls to ensure installation is in accordance with construction documents, specifications, and approved shop drawing submittals and/or manufacturer's instructions. Inspection shall include verifications of fastening of wall components and wall anchorages including number, type and spacing of fasteners as well as confirmation that installed connections allow for specified vertical and/or drift deflections. <b>(100% inspection rate with a minimum inspection rate of once weekly during nonbearing wall installation.)</b></p>

MATERIAL / ACTIVITY	SCOPE OF SERVICE
<b>1705.13 Testing and Qualification for Seismic Resistance</b>	
1705.13.2 Structural Steel (Seismic Force Resisting System)	<p>Special inspector shall submit a written quality assurance plan for field testing in accordance with AISC 341-16 Chapter J</p> <p>Test welding of Seismic Force Resisting System in accordance with AISC 341-10 item J6</p>

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Contract description.
  - 2. Work by Owner or other Work at the Site.
  - 3. Owner-furnished products.
  - 4. Contractor's use of Site and premises.
  - 5. Future work.
  - 6. Work sequence.
  - 7. Owner occupancy.
  - 8. Permits.
  - 9. Specification conventions.

#### 1.2 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION

- A. Work of the Project includes construction or alteration per the project drawings.
  - 1. Work is the HVAC replacement in the classroom wings which include Area A, B (not including 6 classrooms behind the band room), C, D (2 wings), and E (including the gym). Work does NOT include ductwork and air distribution devices.
  - 2. Work associated with ceiling demolition to accomplish HVAC component replacement.
  - 3. HCS acknowledges that a crane will be needed to replace the units in the cafeteria, auditorium, and gym with rooftop units. Based on site conditions, this crane will need to travel over existing site work. The Contractor will be responsible for protecting the grassed areas as much as possible. Repair to the grassed areas will be at the Contractor's cost. The Contractor shall make every effort to prevent damage to the hardscape, pavement, and concrete curb and gutters, however, repairs to the damage of the hardscape, pavement, and concrete curb and gutters will be at Horry County Schools' cost.
- B. Contract with Owner according to Conditions of Contract.

#### 1.3 WORK BY OWNER OR OTHERS

- A. Work associated with the Building Automation System (BAS) will be contracted with HCS BAS Contractor, Control Management, Inc (CMI), directly by HCS. The Owner will coordinate the sequence of work under all contracts according to the "Work Sequence" and "Contractor's Use of Site and Premises" Articles in this Section.
- B. Contractor to coordinate BAS work with Owner, Owner's BAS contractor, and contractor's forces.
- C. Work associated with the Fire Alarm system will be contracted with HCS Fire Alarm Contractor, Johnson Controls, Inc. (JCI), directly by HCS. The Owner will coordinate the

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

sequence of work under all contracts according to the "Work Sequence" and "Contractor's Use of Site and Premises" Articles in this Section.

- D. Contractor to coordinate fire alarm work with Owner, Owner's contractor, and contractor's forces.
- E. HVAC Testing and Balancing agent as specified in Section 230593 will be provided by the Owner.
- F. Work under this Contract includes:
  - 1. Work as indicated on Drawings and as specified in the Project Manual.
- G. Items noted NIC (Not in Contract) will be furnished and installed by the Owner.

## 1.4 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Arrange for and deliver Owner-reviewed Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples to Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange and pay for delivery to Site.
  - 3. Upon delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
  - 4. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
  - 5. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Review Owner-reviewed Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.
  - 2. Receive and unload products at Site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with Owner.
  - 3. Handle, store, install, and finish products.
  - 4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Limit use of Site and premises to allow:
  - 1. Owner occupancy.
  - 2. Work by Owner.
- B. Construction Operations: Limited to areas indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Noisy and Disruptive Operations (such as Use of Jack Hammers and Other Noisy Equipment): Not allowed in close proximity to existing building during regular hours of operation. Coordinate and schedule such operations with Owner to minimize disruptions.
- C. Utility Outages and Shutdown:
  - 1. Coordinate and schedule electrical and other utility outages with Owner.
  - 2. Outages: Allowed only at previously agreed upon times. In general, schedule outages at times when the facility is not being used.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. Construction Plan: Before start of construction, submit three copies of construction plan regarding access to Work, use of Site, and utility outages for acceptance by Owner. After acceptance of plan, construction operations shall comply with accepted plan unless deviations are accepted by Owner in writing.

### 1.6 PERMITS

- A. Obtain all permits and licenses required to perform the work required by the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications and Contract).

### 1.7 SPECIFICATION LANGUAGE

- A. These Specifications are written in imperative mood and streamlined form. This imperative language is directed to Contractor unless specifically noted otherwise. The words "shall be" are included by inference where a colon (:) is used within sentences or phrases.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION - Not Used

END OF SECTION

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 012100

### ALLOWANCES PROCEDURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Construction Drawings, Technical Specifications, Addenda, and general provisions of the Contract, including Contract General Conditions and Supplementary General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Allowances indicated in the Bid Proposal Form to be included in Contract Amount.
  - 1. Selected materials and equipment, and in some cases, their installation, are shown and specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. Additional requirements, if necessary, will be issued by change order.
  - 2. Allowances may be used in lieu of metering for temporary construction site utility services or to reimburse project related work performed by District forces, for example, keying.

##### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Refer to product Specifications Sections identified in Allowance description.

##### 1.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ALLOWANCES

- A. Contractor shall submit cost data and other descriptive data to establish basis used by Contractor for determining costs in Contract Amount attributable to each Allowance.
- B. Any amount not fully consumed shall be adjusted by change order.
  - 1. The Contractor will be credited for his actual cost of labor, materials, and other actual costs WITHOUT mark-up.
  - 2. Any unused allowances shall be returned to the Owner using a credit change order for the full amount of the value unused.
  - 3. Should the Contractor's actual costs exceed the specified allowance, the Contractor's Contract Amount will be adjusted by change order in accordance with Contract.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 LUMP SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Owners Contingency:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. The Contractor shall include a contract allowance of \$75,000.00 in their proposal to provide all material, labor, and equipment necessary to design, permit, and installation of unknown conditions.
2. Owner to determine the conditions and use of this allowance.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SELECTION OF PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Representative and Architect will:
  1. Consult with Contractor for considerations to be given in selection of products, suppliers, and qualified installers.
  2. Make selection in consultation with HCS Facility staff. Obtain written direction by HCS's Representative designating:
    - a. Product, color, design, and finish.
    - b. Accessories and attachments.
    - c. Suppliers and qualified installers, as applicable.
    - d. Allowance amount to be included in the Contract Amount.
    - e. Construction Contract warranty and manufacturer's guarantee provisions.
- B. Contractor shall:
  1. Assist HCS Facility staff's Representative and Architect in determining qualified suppliers or installers.
  2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers.
  3. Make cost and constructability recommendations to Owner's Representative and Architect for consideration in product, supplier and qualified installer selections.
  4. Notify Owner's Representative and Architect promptly of:
    - a. Reasonable objections Contractor may have against any supplier or party under consideration for installation.
    - b. Effects on Construction Schedule anticipated by selections under consideration.

#### 3.2 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Upon notification of selection, Contractor shall execute purchase agreement with designated supplier(s) and enter into contract(s) with designated qualified installer(s), as applicable.
- B. Contractor shall make all arrangements for and submit shop drawings, product data and samples as required.
- C. Contractor shall make all arrangements for pick-up, delivery, handling, and storage of products.
- D. Upon delivery, Contractor shall promptly inspect products for damage or defects. Should damage or defects be found, Contractor shall affect return, replacement or

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

repair of products, as appropriate, and process claims for transportation damage.

- E. Contractor shall furnish, apply, install, and finish products in compliance with requirements of applicable Sections of Specifications.

### 3.3 ADJUSTMENT COSTS

- A. Should the net cost of the Allowance be more or less than the amount included in the Contract Amount, the Contract Amount shall be adjusted in accordance with provisions of the Contract General Conditions and a Change Order shall be executed.

END OF SECTION



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
  - 2. Include, as part of the Base Bid and as part of the Alternative Bid the Owners Contingency allowance of \$75,000.00.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Base Bid: To provide all Work as described in the Drawings and Specifications less work shown in the 400 wing.
- B. Alternate Number 1: To provide all Work in the 400 wing as described in the Drawings and Specification that includes, but is not limited to the demolition and replacement of MAU and MSAH/MSCU.

END OF SECTION 012300

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENT

- A. The **Contract Agreement** with referenced attachments, technical specifications and drawings including all project addenda constitute the Scope of the Work.
- B. Specific project requirements are included in the Contract Agreement and contain, but may include more than the following:
  - 1. Pre-Construction Meeting
  - 2. Construction Management
  - 3. Conformance to applicable Codes and Laws
  - 4. Project Schedule
  - 5. SLED Background checks
  - 6. Submittals
  - 7. Record Drawings
  - 8. Quality Control
  - 9. Cut and Patching
  - 10. Jobsite Supervision
  - 11. Work site control and clean-up.
  - 12. Material testing and Inspections
  - 13. Warranties and Guarantees
  - 14. Traffic Control and Safety
- C. **Important safety and specific Horry County School requirements are contained in the Contract Agreement and specifically Section 83 “Mandatory Safety and Conduct Requirements.”**

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Those work restrictions and limitations listed on the **Scope of Work ( Exhibit A )** and the **Contract Agreement**.

#### 1.3 UTILITY USE AND CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless specifically noted otherwise within the Scope of Work ( Exhibit A ) to the Contract Agreement. Allow other entities to use temporary

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

### B. Requirement for temporary utilities to be paid for by the Owner:

1. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations at no cost to the Owner.
2. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations at no cost to the Owner.
  - a. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
  - b. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### 1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Included within the **Contract agreement** and within each specific specification section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEMPORARY FENCING

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch , 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.

- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch , 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in **Contract agreement**. Keep office clean and orderly.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures".

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Heating: Provide temporary heating required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- F. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  - 1. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel.

1. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:

B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.

1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.

2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.

E. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.

1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.

2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.

a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.

3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations and / or as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  - 2. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  - 3. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.
  - 2. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
    - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
  - 3. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  - 4. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  - 5. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  - 6. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - 7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 013100

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Installation of the Work.
  - 2. Cutting and patching.
  - 3. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 4. Progress cleaning.
  - 5. Starting and adjusting.
  - 6. Protection of installed construction.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- B. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, **mechanical and electrical systems**, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to **local utility and to Owner** that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Owner.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Engineer **and Owner** promptly.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect **or Owner**. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

### 3.5 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017300

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Construction waste management plan.
  - 2. Construction waste recycling.
  - 3. Construction waste adaptive reuse.

#### 1.2 PLAN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Develop and implement construction waste management plan as approved by Architect/Engineer.
- B. Intent:
  - 1. Divert construction, demolition, and land-clearing debris from landfill disposal.
  - 2. Redirect recyclable material back to manufacturing process.
  - 3. Generate cost savings or increase minimal additional cost to Project for waste disposal.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Construction Waste Management Plan: Submit construction waste management plan describing methods and procedures for implementation and monitoring compliance including the following:
  - 1. Transportation company hauling construction waste to waste processing facilities.
  - 2. Recycling and adaptive reuse processing facilities and waste type each facility will accept.
  - 3. Construction waste materials anticipated for recycling and adaptive reuse.
  - 4. On-Site sorting and Site storage methods.

#### 1.4 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. Construction Waste Landfill Diversion: Minimum 50 percent by weight of construction waste materials for duration of Project through resale, recycling, or adaptive reuse.
- B. Implement construction waste management plan at start of construction.
- C. Review construction waste management plan at preconstruction meeting and progress meetings.
- D. Distribute approved construction waste management plan to Subcontractors and others affected by plan requirements.
- E. Oversee plan implementation, instruct construction personnel for plan compliance, and document plan results.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- F. Purchase products to prevent waste by:
  - 1. Ensuring correct quantity of each material is delivered to Site.
  - 2. Choosing products with minimal or no packaging.
  - 3. Requiring suppliers to use returnable pallets or containers.
  - 4. Requiring suppliers to take or buy back rejected or unused items.

### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION WASTE RECYCLING

- A. Use source separation method or comingling method suitable to sorting and processing method of selected recycling center. Dispose nonrecyclable trash separately into landfill.
- B. Source Separation Method: Recyclable materials separated from trash and sorted into separate bins or containers, identified by waste type, prior to transportation to recycling center.
- C. Comingling Method: Recyclable materials separated from trash and placed in unsorted bins or container for sorting at recycling center.
- D. Materials suggested for recycling include:
  - 1. Packing materials including paper, cardboard, foam plastic, and sheeting.
  - 2. Recyclable plastics.
  - 3. Organic plant debris.
  - 4. Earth materials.
  - 5. Native stone and granular fill.
  - 6. Asphalt and concrete paving.
  - 7. Wood with and without embedded nails and staples.
  - 8. Glass, clear and colored types.
  - 9. Metals.
  - 10. Gypsum products.
  - 11. Acoustical ceiling tile.
  - 12. Carpet.
  - 13. Equipment oil.

### 1.6 CONSTRUCTION WASTE ADAPTIVE REUSE

- A. Arrange with processing facility for salvage of construction material and processing for reuse. Do not reuse construction materials on-Site except as allowed by Architect/Engineer.
- B. Materials suggested for adaptive reuse include:
  - 1. Concrete and crushed concrete.
  - 2. Masonry units.
  - 3. Lumber suitable for re-sawing or refinishing.
  - 4. Casework and millwork.
  - 5. Doors and door frames.
  - 6. Windows.
  - 7. Window glass and insulating glass units.
  - 8. Hardware.
  - 9. Acoustical ceiling tile.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

10. Equipment and appliances.
11. Fluorescent light fixtures and lamps.
12. Incandescent light fixtures and lamps.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION WASTE COLLECTION

- A. Collect construction waste materials in marked bins or containers and arrange for transportation to recycling centers or adaptive salvage and reuse processing facilities.
- B. Maintain recycling and adaptive reuse storage and collection area in orderly arrangement with materials separated to eliminate co-mingling of materials required to be delivered separately to waste processing facility.
- C. Store construction waste materials to prevent environmental pollution, fire hazards, hazards to persons and property, and contamination of stored materials.
- D. Cover construction waste materials subject to disintegration, evaporation, settling, or runoff to prevent polluting air, water, and soil.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Deliver construction waste to waste processing facilities. Obtain receipt for deliveries.
- B. Dispose of construction waste not capable of being recycled or adaptively reused by delivery to landfill, incinerator, or other legal disposal facility. Obtain receipt for deliveries.

END OF SECTION



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From all authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

#### 1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  3. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  2. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  3. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 5 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect, Engineer and Owner will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect and Engineer will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by the Architect and Engineer, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Contractor shall compensate Architect and Engineer at the firm's standard billing rates for additional reinspections beyond the first.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

### 1.5 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items:
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 5 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. Engineer will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Contractor shall

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

compensate Architect and Engineer at the firm's standard billing rates for additional reinspections beyond the first.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Owner for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 NOT USED

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements specified.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

END OF SECTION 017700

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
    - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
    - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least **30** days before commencing demonstration and training. Engineer will determine whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least **15** days before commencing demonstration and training.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

### 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

### 2.3 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for identification.

### 2.4 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### 2.5 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available. Provide recording in commonly used digital format.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit **one** set(s) of marked-up record prints.
    - a. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit **annotated PDF electronic file** of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit **annotated PDF electronic files and directories** of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit **annotated PDF electronic files** of each submittal.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
  - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
  - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
  - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
  - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
2. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
4. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
5. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

### 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, **record Product Data**, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as **scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications**.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Engineer's **and Owner's** reference at all times work is being performed.

END OF SECTION 017839

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Operations manuals.
    - b. Maintenance manuals.
    - c. Project record documents.
    - d. Identification systems.
    - e. Warranties and bonds.
    - f. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training modules. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at the instruction location.

### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare the instruction program and training modules, coordinate instructors, and coordinate between Contractor and Owner for the number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At the beginning of each training module, record each chart containing the learning objectives and lesson outline.
- B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to **format file type acceptable to Owner**, on electronic media.
  - 1. Electronic Media: Read-only format compact disc acceptable to Owner, with commercial-grade graphic label.
  - 2. File Names: Utilize file names based on the name of equipment generally described in the video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
  - 3. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved in the Project, arranged according to the Project table of contents:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
  - b. Business address.
  - c. Business phone number.
  - d. Point of contact.
  - e. E-mail address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
    - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of the Project Manual table of contents.
    - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming, and pause the training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are visible prior to recording.
1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in the same format as recordings of live training.

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused.
3. Demolition and removal of the existing roof system and base flashings down to the roof deck on the roof areas indicated on the demolition plan.
4. Removal of all existing sheet metal and all associated components to be replaced with new.
5. Repairs to existing roof deck assembly where damaged or deteriorated shall be performed using unit prices.
6. Demolition and removal of the existing roof drains components that are required to be replaced.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 070150.19 - Preparation for Reroofing

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Demolish: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.
- C. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- D. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work. The main office will remain open, discuss with District to determine if there are any summer programs at the school.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage and demolition operations. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.
- F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- G. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

## 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.

4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
  - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
  - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 2 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area off-site designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.



## 3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight.
  - 1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
  - 2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

## 3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

## 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 050520 - POST INSTALLED STRUCTURAL ANCHORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wedge anchors
  - 2. Cartridge injection adhesive anchors
- B. This specification section is only intended for use when specifically required by the drawings or other referencing specifications and structural applications. This section is not intended for use in non-structural applications or where not specifically referenced by the drawings or other specification sections.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
  - 2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for anchorage of structural steel.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The basis of design products are as specified in this specification or the contract documents. Product substitutions must have capacities equal to or greater than values calculated for each specific condition calculated when calculated using the data in the referenced ESR report and in accordance with the appropriate design procedure and standards required by the building code. See requirements for substitution submittals.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Post Installed Structural Anchors: Anchors supporting and/or anchoring structural elements of the building which are installed into hardened concrete or masonry and that are specified in the contract documents or performance based shop drawing design submittals for structural elements.
- B. Wedge Anchors: A torque-controlled anchor, with an integral cone expander and single piece steel expansion clip providing 360-degree contact with the base material while not requiring oversized holes for installation and an impact section to prevent thread damage with required nuts and washers.

- C. Cartridge Injection Adhesive Anchors: An anchor system consisting of rod insert, nut, washer and a cartridge type, two-component polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive system dispensed and mixed through a static mixing nozzle supplied by the manufacturer.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility Per Division 01 Section "Collective Inspections and Structural Testing"
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Wedge Anchors
  - 2. Cartridge Injection Adhesive Anchors
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports:
  - 1. Submit ICC reports for the following:
    - a. Wedge Anchors
    - b. Cartridge Injection Adhesive Anchors
- D. Substitutions:
  - 1. Substitution requests may only be made using products with ICC-ESR reports for the product in the specific substrate.
  - 2. Substitution request shall include signed and sealed calculations demonstrating that the product is capable of providing equivalent performance of the specified product for each specific location and condition when calculated using the data in the referenced ESR report and in accordance with the appropriate design procedure and standards required by the building code.
  - 3. Substitution request shall specify the diameter and embedment depth of the substituted product
  - 4. Any increase in material labor cost resulting from the substitution shall be the responsibility of the contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Instruction: Manufacturer's Installation Instructions
- F. Qualification Data: Submit installer qualification data as stated in Quality Assurance section. Qualifications shall be submitted in a letter format for each type of anchor to be installed, and shall include the following:
  - 1. The specific product to be used
  - 2. Complete description of installation procedure
  - 3. Personnel to be trained on anchor installation
  - 4. Date of Manufacturer training
  - 5. Manufacturer's training certificates or letter from manufacturer certifying training was complete with a list of individuals that were trained.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
  - a. Coordinate meeting with individual preinstallation conferences for the following
  - b. Structural Steel Framing
  - c. Cold-Formed Metal Framing
  - d. Rough Carpentry
- B. Installer Qualifications: The installer shall be experienced in installing anchors equal to type, and into the substrate material required for this project
- C. Installer Training: Conduct a thorough training session with the manufacturer's representative. Each individual responsible for the installation of anchors shall attend the training session. Training shall consist of a review of the complete process for the installation of the anchors and the use of proper equipment for drilling and installing the anchors, to include but not limited to:
  - 1. Hole drilling procedure. Clarify acceptability of rotary hammer drilling and/or core drilling.
  - 2. Hole drilling equipment
  - 3. Type and diameter of drill bits
  - 4. Hole preparation and hole cleaning technique
  - 5. Hole cleaning equipment
  - 6. Adhesive injection technique
  - 7. Adhesive injection equipment
  - 8. Anchor rod, nut and washer material requirements and associated cleaning requirements
  - 9. Anchor and Anchor rod installation
  - 10. Anchor tightening
  - 11. Adhesive curing requirements
- D. Certifications: All anchors shall have an ICC ESR Evaluation report indicating conformance with the current applicable Acceptance Criteria for the building code applicable to the project.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Keep anchors, rod materials, nuts and washers in manufacturer's packaging with label intact until needed for use.
- B. Keep anchors free of dirt and debris.
- C. Store anchors in a clean dry area
- D. Protect anchors from corrosion and deterioration.
- E. Store anchors and adhesives in strict accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Nuts: Having a proof load stress equal or greater than the minimum tensile strength of the associated anchor where type and strength is not specifically indicated by anchor or adhesive manufacturer.
- B. Washers: Of type and material compatible with nuts unless specifically indicated by anchor or adhesive manufacturer.
- C. Plate Washers: Provide ASTM A 36 plate washers of size and configuration specifically indicated.

### 2.2 CORROSION RESISTANCE

#### A. Anchors and Anchor Bodies

- 1. Uncoated Carbon Steel: Carbon steel anchors uncoated and free from oil, lubricants and other deleterious substances. Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. Interior dry conditions
- 2. Zinc Plated: Zinc plating in accordance with ASTM B633, Type III Fe/Zn 5 (SC1) Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. Interior dry conditions
- 3. Hot Dip Galvanized: Carbon steel anchors with hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 153. Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. Interior dry conditions
  - b. Exterior conditions
  - c. Anchoring galvanized steel elements
- 4. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 304 or 316 stainless steel and complying with ASTM F 593. Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. Anchoring treated lumber elements
  - b. Anchoring stainless steel elements
  - c. Anchoring aluminum elements or in contact with aluminum elements.

#### B. Nuts

- 1. Uncoated carbon steel: Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. With Uncoated Anchors
- 2. Hot Dip Galvanized: Hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 153. Acceptable for use as follows:

- a. With Zinc Plated Anchors
  - b. With Hot Dip Galvanized Anchors
- 3. Stainless Steel: ASTM F594. Acceptable for use as follows:
  - a. With Stainless Steel Anchors
- C. Washers
  - 1. Uncoated carbon steel: Acceptable for use as follows:
    - a. With uncoated anchors
  - 2. Hot Dip Galvanized: Hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 153. Acceptable for use as follows:
    - a. With Hot Dip Galvanized Nuts
  - 3. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 304 or 316 stainless steel. Acceptable for use as follows:
    - a. With Stainless Steel Nuts
- D. Plate Washers:
  - 1. Uncoated carbon steel: Acceptable for use as follows:
    - a. With Uncoated Nuts
  - 2. Hot Dip Galvanized: Hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 153. Acceptable for use as follows:
    - a. With Hot Dip Galvanized Nuts

## 2.3 WEDGE ANCHORS

- A. Provide anchors with length identification markings conforming to ICC-ES AC01 or ICC-ES AC193 as appropriate based on the anchor substrate..
- B. Size: As indicated on drawings
- C. Embedment depth: As indicated on the drawings but not less than the manufacturer's documented minimum embedment depth. Where not specifically indicated use manufacturer's minimum documented embedment depth.
  - 1. Embedment depth is from surface of concrete or masonry. Anchor lengths and extent of threads shall account for embedment depth, connected elements, plate washers, washers, nut and appropriate stick thru.
- D. Concrete Anchors:

1. Anchors shall be tested in accordance with ACI 355.2 and the most recent issue of ICC-ES AC193 including the following:
  - a. All mandatory testing
  - b. Shear and tension in cracked concrete.
  - c. Critical and minimum edge distances and spacing
2. Anchors design shall be in accordance with ACI 318 Appendix D
3. Where not specifically indicated otherwise in contract documents or approved performance based shop drawings submittal anchors shall be as follows:
  - a. Hilti Kwik Bolt TZ with nut and washer, of required finish, ICC ESR-1917
  - b. Approved equal (See substitution requirements)

#### 2.4 CARTRIDGE INJECTION ADHESIVE ANCHORS

- A. Provide anchors with length identification markings conforming to ICC-ES AC58 or ICC-ES AC308.
- B. Size: As indicated on drawings
- C. Embedment depth: As indicated on the drawings but not less than the manufacturer's documented minimum embedment depth. Where not specifically indicated use manufacturer's minimum documented embedment depth.
  1. Embedment depth is from surface of concrete or masonry. Anchor lengths and extent of threads shall account for embedment depth, connected elements, plate washers, washers, nut and appropriate stick thru.
- D. Adhesive: Two component epoxy or two component hybrid system.
- E. Concrete Anchors:
  1. Anchors shall be tested in accordance with the most recent issue of ICC-ES AC308 including the following:
    - a. All mandatory testing
    - b. Shear and tension in cracked concrete.
    - c. Critical and minimum edge distances and spacing
  2. Anchors design shall be in accordance with ACI 318 Appendix D as amended by the specific design provisions of ICC-ES AC308
  3. Where not specifically indicated otherwise in contract documents or approved performance based shop drawings submittal anchors shall be as follows:
    - a. Rods, washers, and nuts of required finish with Hilti HIT RE 500 V3 Adhesive Anchorage System for anchorage to concrete, ICC ESR-3814.
    - b. Rods
      - 1) Carbon Steel Rods: ASTM A193 B7 coated as required for use
      - 2) Stainless Steel Rods: ASTM F593, CW

- c. Approved equal (See substitution requirements)
- 4. Where Hilti HIT-HY 200, ICC ESR-3187 system is specifically indicated in contract documents or approved performance based shop drawings submittal anchors shall be as follows:
  - a. For anchors 3/8" to 3/4" diameter: HIT-Z Standard or HIT-Z-R SS rods, washers, and nuts of required finish.
  - b. Approved equal (See substitution requirements)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 2. Installation constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility of satisfactory performance.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Corrosion Resistance: Care shall be taken to ensure an anchor and associated accessories of the proper material and associated corrosion resistance are used for the specification application. See corrosion resistance requirements above.
- B. Where manufacturer recommends the use of special tools for installation of anchors, such tools shall be used.
- C. Match mark and drill, match drill or use other methods to ensure anchors are properly located.
- D. Do not adjust anchor location after installation. Coordinate with EOR for modifications to connected element where anchors are incorrectly located.
- E. All facets of hole drilling, hole cleaning, anchor installation, anchor torquing shall be in strict accordance with the ICC-ESR report and manufacturer's data.
- F. Drill holes perpendicular to substrate surface.
- G. Drill holes with rotary impact hammer drills using carbide-tipped bits or core drills using diamond core bits as indicated in the ICC-ESR report.
- H. Drill bits and core bits shall be of diameters indicated in the ICC-ESR report.
- I. All holes shall be cleaned with compressed air to remove all drilling dust and other deleterious substances.



- J. Remove water from holes to attain a surface dry condition unless specifically permitted otherwise by ICC-ESR report.
- K. Base Material Strength: Unless otherwise specified, do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
- L. Embedded Items: Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Exercise care in coring or drilling to avoid damaging existing reinforcing or embedded items. Notify the Engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Take precautions as necessary to avoid damaging prestressing tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
- M. Perform anchor installation in strict accordance with manufacturer instructions and ICC-ES report.
- N. Anchors shall be installed perpendicular to the substrate face within plus or minus 5 degrees unless specifically permitted otherwise by ICC-ESR report.
- O. Install plate washers where specifically indicated or where connected elements have oversized holes.
- P. Install a round washer under nuts. Round washers are in addition to plate washers where plate washers are required.

### 3.3 WEDGE ANCHORS

- A. Protect threads from damage during anchor installation.
- B. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench. Following attainment of 10% of the specified torque, 100% of the specified torque shall be reached within 7 or fewer complete turns of the nut. If the specified torque is not achieved within the required number of turns, the anchor shall be removed and replaced unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

### 3.4 CARTRIDGE INJECTION ADHESIVE ANCHORS

- A. Clean all holes per manufacturer instructions using manufacturer's approved tools to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive.
- B. Inject adhesive into holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
- C. Follow manufacturer recommendations to ensure proper mixing of adhesive components.
- D. Sufficient adhesive shall be injected in the hole to ensure that the annular gap is filled to the surface.
- E. Remove excess adhesive from the surface.
- F. Shim anchors with suitable device to center the anchor in the hole.

- G. Do not disturb or load anchors before manufacturer specified cure time has elapsed.
- H. Observe manufacturer recommendations with respect to installation temperatures.
- I. Hilti HIT-HY200 system anchors shall be installed using the Hilti Safe Set Technology.
  - 1. For conditions using HAS rods the Hilti hollow drill bit and Hilt vacuum system shall be employed.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspection: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports in accordance with the schedule of special inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace misplaced or malfunctioning anchors. Fill empty anchor holes and patch failed anchor locations with high-strength non-shrink, nonmetallic grout. Anchors that fail to meet proof load or installation torque requirements shall be regarded as malfunctioning.
- B. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 050520

## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Structural steel.
- 2. Nonshrink Grout.

- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section:

- 1. Anchor rods and embed plates indicated to be cast into cast-in-place concrete, installed under Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place-Concrete"

- C. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
- 2. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs."
- 3. Division 05 Section "Post Installed Structural Anchors" for wedge, and adhesive anchors

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and as modified herein.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering design by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.

- 1. Select and complete connections using AISC 360 .
- 2. Use LRFD; data are given at factored-load level.
- 3. All bolted connections for bracing members shall be designed and fabricated as slip critical connections to allow for field reaming of holes to address fit up issues.
- 4. The minimum number of bolts for any connection shall be two.
- 5. All steel to steel connections shall extend at least two thirds of the depth of the supported member being connected.

6. All connections shall be designed to fit within the confines of concealed spaces unless specifically noted as acceptable to be exposed to view.
7. Connections shall allow for flush deck bearing at top flange of all beams beneath deck. If cover or flange plates are used a method for flush deck support around the cover/flange plate shall be provided at no cost to the owner.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility Per Division 01 Section "Collective Inspections and Structural Testing"
- B. Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance Per Division 01 Section "Collective Inspections and Structural Testing"
- C. Weekly Inspection reports for Shop Fabricated Steel
- D. Nonconformance reports for Shop Fabricated Steel
- E. Product Data:
  1. Primers
  2. Electrodes
    - a. Indicate what welding process will be used with each electrode
    - b. Submit electrodes for both shop and field welding
    - c. Indicate compliance with AWS D1.8 Clause 6.3 for electrodes used in both SFRS Connections and Demand Critical Welds
  3. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  4. Direct-tension indicators.
  5. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  6. Nonshrink grout.
  7. Post installed structural anchors: See specification section 050520

F. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. All anchor rods shall be detailed with a minimum 2" projection above top of nut in the final installed condition unless noted otherwise.
2. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
3. Include embedment drawings showing plan location and elevation of all embedded items.
4. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
5. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
6. Include scale drawings of all gusset plates.
7. Provide minimum 1/4" thick cap plates at the ends of all exposed HSS members, and at the top of all HSS columns.
8. Equally space filler beams or joists between columns and/or other dimensioned beams unless noted otherwise.
9. Where delegated design submittals are required the delegated design submittal must be included with associated shop drawings or the submittal will not be reviewed.
10. Identify demand critical welds.
11. All bolts shall use standard or holes or short-slotted holes (perpendicular to the applied load).
12. All bolts in the SFRS shall be detailed and installed as pretensioned high-strength bolts
13. Faying surfaces in all SFRS member bolted connections shall be satisfy the requirements for slip-critical connections with faying surfaces having a class A slip coefficient or higher.

G. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Steel to Steel Connections:
  - a. For structural steel connections indicated to comply with design loads provide structural design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - 1) Each individual calculation shall be clearly labeled in coordination with erection drawings such that it identifies the member(s) that the connection applies to.
  - b. Professional Engineer's Statement: A written statement indicating that the for fabrication shop drawings incorporate all the connection requirements included in the calculations submitted for approval inclusive of any corrections required in response to shop drawing review comments. The statement shall be prepared by, and signed and sealed by the professional engineer that completed the calculations submittal.

- c. The calculations must be included with the associated shop drawing submittal or the submittal will not be reviewed.
  - H. Slip Critical Bolt Installation Statement: A written statement indicating the means and equipment to be used to achieve the tightening requirements for slip critical bolt installation. Statement shall identify the specific pre-installation required by the special inspections and acknowledge that this testing must be coordinated and completed prior to commencement of erection.
  - I. As-built anchor rod and embed survey
  - J. Welding certificates
    - 1. Submit welding certificates for all individuals expected to be performing field welding
  - K. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS's) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each field welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
    - 1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
    - 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
  - L. Qualification Data:
    - 1. Fabricator
    - 2. Structural Steel Erector
    - 3. Post Installed Structural Anchor Installer: See specification section 050520
  - M. Research/Evaluation Reports:
    - 1. Post Installed Structural Anchors per specification section 050520
  - N. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - O. Material Test Reports
  - P. Minutes of preinstallation conference.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Quality Control Plan: Each fabricator and Erector shall provide a job specific Quality Control plan.

1. The plan shall specifically identify all QC and QA inspections the fabricator and erector will be completing, the frequency of those inspections and the contractor's personnel and/or contractor's testing agency that will be completing the specific inspections.
  2. AISC Code of Standard Practice
  3. The plan shall comply with AISC 360-10 chapter N modified as follows:
    - a. 100% UT of CJP groove welds without reduction.
  4. The plan shall comply with AWS D1.1
  5. The plan shall comply with the requirements of AISC 341-10 Chapter J,
  6. The plan shall comply with AWS D1.8.
  7. The plan shall include any additional inspections or testing identified in the contract documents.
- B. Connection Design Engineer
1. Responsibility: Preparation of design calculations for structural steel connections
  2. Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category SBD (Conventional Steel Building Structures) and which employs personnel or an independent testing agency that are qualified to complete all the required inspections and testing. Personnel shall be qualified as required by AWS D1.1 where completing weld testing and inspection.
1. Fabricator Responsibility
    - a. The structural steel fabricator shall be responsible for enlisting the steel erector as a direct subcontractor.
- D. Fabricator's Testing Agency (as required to supplement fabricator personnel): An independent agency, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated. Personnel shall be qualified as required by AWS D1.1 where completing weld testing and inspection.
- E. Structural Steel Installer Qualifications: The erector shall be experienced in installing structural steel equal in material, design and scope to the structural steel required for this project.
- F. Post Installed Structural Anchor Installer: See specification section 050520 for requirements
- G. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- H. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 341-10
  - 3. AISC 360.
  - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
  - 2. Review items requiring special inspection and testing that must be tested and inspected prior to installation of decking, concrete slabs, or other items that might limit access to the item to be tested or inspected
  - 3. Review welding requirements
  - 4. Review electrode storage requirements
  - 5. Review pre-construction bolt installation verification
  - 6. Review bolt installation calibration requirements

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and re-lubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes and Tees: ASTM A 992.
  
- B. Channels, Angles-Shapes:
  - 1. ASTM A 36 unless noted otherwise
  - 2. ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 where indicated.
  
- C. Plate and Bar:
  - 1. ASTM A 36 unless noted otherwise
  - 2. ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 where indicated.
  
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.
  - 1. Square or Rectangular HSS:  $F_y=50$  KSI
  - 2. Round HSS:  $F_y=50$  KSI
  - 3. Debonding Agent: Manufacturer's standard agent suitable to maintain separation of steel core and grout encasement and consistent with tested assemblies
  - 4. Fill Material: Manufacturer's standard grout suitable for use as a confining fill material and consistent with tested assemblies.
  
- E. Welding Electrodes:
  - 1. Comply with AWS D1.1 requirements.
  - 2. In addition all weld filler metal for SFERS connections shall comply with AWS D1.8 Clause 6.3
  
  - 3. In addition all weld filler metal for Demand Critical Welds shall comply AWS D1.8 Clause 6.3

### 2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 as indicated or as required, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish:
  - a. Plain for primed or painted steel
  - b. Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C for hot dip galvanized steel.
2. Direct-Tension Indicators (At Contractor's option for Pretensioned or Slip Critical Connections: ASTM F 959, Type 325 or Type 490 corresponding to bolt type, compressible-washer type).
  - a. Finish:
    - 1) Plain for unprimed steel or steel receiving standard shop primer.
    - 2) Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 for hot galvanized steel or steel to receive high performance top coating.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852 or ASTM F 2280 as indicated or as required, Type 1, heavy hex or round head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
  1. Finish:
    - 1) Plain for unprimed steel or steel receiving standard shop primer.
    - 2) Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 for hot galvanized steel or steel to receive high performance top coating.
- C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36 unless noted otherwise.
  1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
  2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  3. Finish:
    - a. Plain for unprimed steel or steel receiving standard shop primer.
    - b. Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C for hot galvanized steel or steel to receive high performance top coating.
- D. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
  1. Finish:
    - a. Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C for hot galvanized steel or steel to receive high performance top coating.
- E. Post Installed Structural Anchors: See specification section 055020 for products

## 2.3 PAINT

- A. Column Base Paint: A single component, self-priming cold applied Coal Tar Mastic suitable for corrosion protection of below grade steel.
  - 1. Typical at column bases at exterior locations and/or as specifically noted on drawings.
  - 2. Typical for marking protected zones of SFRS
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

## 2.4 NONSHRINK GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
  - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
  - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
  - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not enlarge holes by burning.

2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Joint Type:
    - a. Snug tightened unless noted otherwise
    - b. Slip critical, class "A" for all members of the SFRS.
- B. Weld Connections:
  1. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.
  3. Elements that are part of the SFRS:
    - a. Comply with AISC 341-10, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  4. Demand Critical Welds:
    - a. Comply with AISC 341-10, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

## 2.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean and prepare faying surfaces in class "B" slip critical connections according to SPSC-SP6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

- B. Clean and prepare steel surfaces in class "A" slip critical connections that are to remain unprimed according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" unless noted otherwise.
- C. Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unprimed according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" unless noted otherwise.
- D. Clean and prepare steel surfaces in class "A" slip critical connections that are to be primed according to SPSC-SP6, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

## 2.8 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed to the environment or that will be exposed in the finished work by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  - 2. Galvanize loose and hung lintels, shelf angles, all exposed exterior steel and all steel located in exterior masonry walls unless noted otherwise. Coordinate with drawings and specifications.
    - a. Galvanized elements to be top coated shall not be quenched, and shall be swept blast to ensure proper adhesion of top coats.

## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections
  - 2. The cost for re-inspecting deficient work shall be the responsibility of the fabricator
- B. All source quality control and source quality assurance shall be completed by the fabricator's qualified personnel and/or the fabricator's qualified testing agency and shall be in accordance with the submitted and approved job specific quality control manual.
  - 1. Additional weld inspections as noted herein or in the contract documents.
  - 2. Payment for shop testing and inspection shall be the responsibility of the fabricator.
- C. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

- E. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- F. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified as-built survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Where ungrouted anchor rod sleeves are required caulk the annular surface between the sleeve and the anchor rod to prevent grout from entering the sleeves.
  - 2. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required. All shims shall be steel material.
  - 3. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate as indicated.
  - 4. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed.
  - 5. Bearing plates and loose column base plates shall be grouted and cured prior to erecting the steel to be supported by the plate

6. Base plates attached to columns shall be grouted as soon as possible after the column has been plumbed. Base plates shall be grouted and cured before any elevated slabs are cast or before any column splices are made.
  7. Prior to grouting all loose and latent material shall be removed from bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates. Concrete or masonry surfaces shall be broom clean. All shims or wedges shall be left in place and cut flush to the edge of the base or bearing plate.
  8. Grout shall be placed solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation and curing instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
    - a. Use grout forms and grout surcharging as required to ensure that grout completely fills the space below bearing or base plate, and no voids remain.
  9. Paint base plates, anchor bolts and sections of columns below grade and below finished floor with Coal Tar Mastic Paint when indicated on drawings.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Maintain erection tolerances of architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- E. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- F. Splice members only where indicated.
- G. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- H. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- I. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
  1. For slip critical connections enlarge hole to next standard hole size and provide next standard bolt size.
- J. Pour stops and edge angles: Pour stops and edge angles shall be field installed based on global building control lines to ensure overall building geometry is maintained.
  1. Do not located based on local member geometry.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: As indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Finger Tight Bolts: All joints noted as finger tight shall be hand tightened as required to install elements. Do not tighten by mechanical means
  - 1. Provide jam nuts to prevent nut from backing off.
  - 2. After initial tightening turn nut and jam nut in opposite direction to bind them against one another.
- C. Weld Connections:
  - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
  - 3. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 4. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.
  - 5. Elements that are part of the SFRS:
    - a. Comply with AISC 341-10 Appendix W, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Post Installed Structural Anchors: See specification section 050520 for products

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The erector shall complete Field Quality control in accordance with AISC 360 Chapter N
- B. The erector shall complete Field Quality control in accordance with AISC 341-10 Chapter J
- C. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports in accordance with the schedule of special inspections.
- D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.



- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements when the work was deemed deficient upon initial testing or inspection.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
  - 1. The coating thickness for zinc-rich paint repairs must be 50% higher than the surrounding coating thickness, but not less than 2.0 mils and not greater than 4.0 mils.
  - 2. The repaired surface should be free of lumps, coarse areas and loose particles

END OF SECTION 051200

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Loose steel lintels.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 2.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize and prime all exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

### 2.8 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

### 2.9 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

### 2.10 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

### 2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

## SECTION 061007 – ROOF ROUGH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. New roof wood blocking, framing, nailers, edge strips, crickets, curbs. Where required by drawings and as needed to match height of new insulation.
  - 2. Replacement of rotten wood blocking, framing, nailers, edge strips, crickets, curbs.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal in thickness and 2 inches nominal or greater in width.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:



1. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed wood products not marked with grade stamp.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For preservative-treated wood products, from ICC-ES.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL

- A. Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
  1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
  4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content:
  1. Boards: 19 percent.
  2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent.

### 2.2 LUMBER

- A. Dimension Lumber: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  3. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
  4. Redwood; RIS.
- B. Plywood:

1. Plywood to be used in combination with nailers shall match in thickness and shall be exterior grade and pressure treated material.
2. Plywood used with nailers shall be sandwiched between nailers.
3. Plywood shall conform to DOC PS 1, APA PRP-108 or DOC PS 2, Grade C-D or sheathing grade with exterior glue. Sheathing for roof and walls without corner bracing of framing shall have a span rating of 16/0 or greater for supports 16 inches on center and a span rating of 24/0 or greater for supports 24 inches on center.

### 2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Pressure treated boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWWA U1; Use Category UC3b for all lumber used for roof.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium.
- C. Use process for boards and dimension lumber that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. After treatment, redry boards dimension lumber to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
- F. Application: Treat all wood unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
  1. Use stainless steel fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329 unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Nails: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.
- E. Carbon-Steel Bolts: ASTM A307 with ASTM A563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.
- F. Stainless-Steel Bolts: ASTM F593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

- G. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless-steel, chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing according to ASTM E488, conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit work to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA WCD1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- F. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of members or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- G. Apply copper naphthenate field treatment to comply with AWWPA M4, to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- H. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. ICC-ES AC70 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. "Fastening Schedule" in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 3. "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and "Alternate Attachments" in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
- I. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that do not fully penetrate members where opposite side is exposed to view. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Wood roof nailers, edge strips, curbs and cants:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Provide sizes and configurations at edge perimeters, curbs, and expansion joints.

- b. Thicknesses to match insulation thicknesses and minimum 2 x 6, unless specifically required otherwise.
  - c. If multiple layers, attach each layer independently and minimum 1 1/2 inch thickness at top, when applicable.
  - d. All penetrations shall be a minimum of 8 inches above the finished roof.
- K. Wood Blocking Attachment
- a. Provide attachment to resist 250 pounds per square linear foot in all directions and increased by 100% at corners. This may require attachment to structural framing or adding secondary framing.
- L. Nailers/Fasteners
- 1. 1/4 inch gap between nailers is required.
  - 2. Pre-drilled holes for attachment.
- M. All treated carpentry shall have waterproof underlayment to provide separation with sheet metal.

END OF SECTION 061007

## SECTION 075216 - STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Scope of work includes patching of the existing modified bituminous roof membrane system where mechanical equipment has been replaced, including areas removed to install steel support beams to support new HVAC equipment. Patching over new steel members and up to new curb penetrations with new BUR system. System components to match thickness of existing and meet flush with top existing system. Deck to be primed as needed where rusted. Roofs are a mix of structural slope and slope achieved with tapered insulation, new base insulation and vapor barrier to be fastened, tapered insulation and cover board to be low rise foam adhered, with hot asphalt applied modified bituminous system above. Reinstall surface aggregate stone.
- B. The roof is under warranty and work must be done to maintain it. For the process to maintain the warranty contact the following Johns Manville Rep:
  - 1. Steven Wygand, RRO  
Sales Representative - South Carolina | Roofing Systems  
Johns Manville | A Berkshire Hathaway Company  
Greenville, SC  
M: +1-864-867-3328  
Email: Steven.Wygand@jm.com
- C. Section Includes:
  - 1. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS)-modified bituminous membrane roofing.
  - 2. Vapor retarder.
  - 3. Roof insulation.
  - 4. Cover board.
- D. Section includes the installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck.
- E. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061007 "Roof Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking, and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
  - 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
  - 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
- B. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
  - 1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
  - 2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
  - 4. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - 5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
  - 6. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - 7. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
  - 8. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and, testing agency.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
  - 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
  - 2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Concrete internal relative humidity test reports.
  - 2. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

- G. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer.
  - 1. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 2. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources.
  - 1. Store in a dry location.
  - 2. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.



## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Existing warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, vapor retarder, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Remainder of existing warranty
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, vapor retarders, walkway products, for the following warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746/D3746M, ASTM D4272/D4272M, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system and shall be listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roof assembly identical to that specified for this Project.
- D. Wind Resistance Design: Installed roof assembly shall meet or exceed the following wind uplift pressures. See sheet S001

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Johns Manville Four-Ply Cold Applied Modified Bitumen Gavel Roofing System
  - 1. Base Sheet: DynaBase in JM Cold Application Adhesive
  - 2. Intermediate Felts: DynaBase in JM Cold Application Adhesive

3. Cap: DynaLastic 180 in JM Cold Application Adhesive
4. Spud the existing gravel in all areas where new SBS system meets the built up roof
5. Curb Flashings: DynaBase with utility cement and DynaLastic 180 in utility cement.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from same manufacturer as roofing membrane or manufacturer approved by roofing membrane manufacturer.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
- B. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
- C. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
- D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
- E. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- F. Low Rise Foam Insulation Adhesive in a two component (1:1 ratio), solvent free, elastomeric urethane adhesive, JM One-Step Foamable Adhesive.
- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

### 2.4 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D1970/D1970M polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive, minimum 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) total thickness; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

### 2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards, manufactured or approved by roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roofing assemblies, approved for use in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assemblies. Match existing and as recommended by manufacture.
- B. Insulation:
1. Base Layer: 1-1/2" loose laid, match existing type.
  2. Intermediate layer: 1-1/2" gang fastened, match existing type.
  3. Cover Board: 1/2" coverboard in a low rise adhesive

- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
  - 1. Material: Match roof insulation.
  - 2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 3. Slope:
    - a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot (1:48) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot (1:24) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

## 2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
  - 1. Full-spread spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
- D. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C728, perlite insulation board.
- E. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
- F. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry." Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry."
- G. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C728, perlite insulation board.
- H. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
- I. Cover Board: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, match existing thickness.
- J. Cover Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C1278/C1278M, fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
  - 1. Thickness: Match existing

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  2. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
  4. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction.
1. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's recommendations.
1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.
    - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- D. Install sound absorbing insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings, and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
1. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

- D. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering-sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 and 6 inches (90 and 150 mm), respectively.
  - 1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of the insulation and cover board.
  - 2. Seal laps by rolling.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components, so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing system with vertical surfaces or angle changes greater than 45 deg F (14 deg C).
- D. Installation Over Metal Decking:
  - 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches (600 mm) in adjacent rows end joints staggered not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
    - b. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
    - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width.
    - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump, with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches (600 mm).
      - 1) Trim insulation, so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
    - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

- h. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
  - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' RoofNav for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
  - 2) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation, with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches (300 mm) from previous layer of insulation.
  - a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches (600 mm) in adjacent rows.
  - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in adjacent rows.
  - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width.
  - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump, with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches (600 mm).
  - f. Trim insulation, so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - g. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
  - h. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
    - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
  1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
    - a. Trim cover board, so that water flow is unrestricted.
  3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  4. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification

SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:

- a. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Install sheathing paper over cover board and immediately beneath roof membrane.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING MEMBRANE, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
- B. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
  1. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
  2. Complete terminations and base flashings, and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
  3. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF BASE SHEET

- A. Before installing, unroll base sheet, cut into workable lengths, and allow to lie flat for a time period recommended by manufacturer for the ambient temperature.
- B. Loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
- C. Installation of SBS-Modified Fiberglass-Mat Base Sheet:
  1. Install base sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system.
  2. Extend roofing sheets over and terminate above cants.
  3. Install base sheet in a shingle fashion.
  4. Adhere to substrate in a uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.
  5. Install base sheet without wrinkles, rears, and free from air pockets.
  6. Laps: Accurately align roofing sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps.
    - a. Lap side laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).
    - b. Lap end laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 12 inches (300 mm).

- c. Stagger end laps not less than 18 inches (450 mm).
  - d. Heat weld end laps, leaving no voids.
  - e. Roll laps with a 20-pound (9-kg) roller.
7. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
  8. Apply pressure to the body of the base sheet according to manufacturer's instructions, to remove air pockets and to result in complete adhesion of base sheet to substrate.

D. Installation of Asphalt-Coated Fiberglass-Mat Base Sheet:

1. Install base sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system.
2. Extend roofing sheets over and terminate above cants.
3. Install base sheet in a shingle fashion.
4. Adhere to substrate in a uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.
5. Install base sheet without wrinkles or tears, and free from air pockets.
6. Laps: Accurately align roofing sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps.
  - a. Lap side laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).
  - b. Lap end laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
  - c. Stagger end laps not less than 18 inches (450 mm).
  - d. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
7. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF INTERPLY SHEETS

A. Install two ply sheets, starting at low point of roofing.

1. Align ply sheets without stretching.
2. Shingle side laps of ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane.
  - a. Shingle in direction to shed water.
3. Extend ply sheets over and terminate above cants.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS CAP SHEET

- A. Before installing, unroll cap sheet, cut into workable lengths, and allow to lie flat for a time period recommended by manufacturer for the ambient temperature at which cap sheet will be installed.
- B. Install modified bituminous roofing cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system.
1. Extend cap sheet over and terminate above cants.



2. Install cap sheet in a shingle fashion.
  3. Install cap sheet as follows:
    - a. Adhere to substrate in a uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.
  4. Install cap sheet without wrinkles or tears, and free from air pockets.
  5. Install cap sheet, so side and end laps shed water.
- C. Laps: Accurately align roofing sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps.
1. Lap side laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).
  2. Lap end laps as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer but not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
  3. Stagger end laps not less than 18 inches (450 mm).
  4. Heat weld laps, leaving no voids.
  5. Roll laps with a 20-pound (9-kg) roller.
  6. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
- D. Apply pressure to the body of the cap sheet according to manufacturer's instructions, to remove air pockets and to result in complete adhesion of base sheet to substrate.
- E. Apply roofing granules of same color as roof membrane to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot, to provide a continuous color appearance.
- F. Aggregate Surfacing: After installing and testing roofing, base flashing, and stripping, promptly apply flood coat to roof surface with 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (3 kg/sq. m) of hot roofing asphalt. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:
1. Aggregate Weight: 300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m).

### 3.11 INSTALLATION OF FLASHING AND STRIPPING

- A. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
1. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
  2. Backer Sheet Application:
    - a. Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets.
    - b. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of utility cement
    - c. Retain first subparagraph below for torch-applied flashing sheets.
    - d. Seal all laps.
  3. Backer Sheet Application:
    - a. Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of utility cement.
    - b. Seal all laps.
  4. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at asphalt temperature recommended by flashing sheet

- manufacturer. Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
5. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
  6. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
  7. Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
    - a. Perform torch application according to NFPA 241, including two-hour fire watch after torches have been extinguished.
- B. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
- C. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
  1. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement.
- D. Install roofing cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Perform the following tests:
1. Flood Testing: Flood test each roofing area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
    - a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
    - b. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (51 mm) of clearance from top of base flashing.
    - c. Flood each area for 48 hours.
    - d. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
      - 1) Cost of retesting is the responsibility of the Contractor.
    - e. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of initial leaks, if any, and final survey report.
  2. Infrared Thermography: Testing agency shall survey entire roof area using infrared color thermography according to ASTM C1153.

- a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
  - b. After infrared scan, locate specific areas of leaks by electrical capacitance/impedance testing, or by nuclear hydrogen detection testing.
  - c. After testing, repair leaks, repeat tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
    - 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
  - d. Testing agency shall prepare survey report of initial scan indicating locations of entrapped moisture if any.
3. Electrical Capacitance/Impedance Testing: Testing agency shall survey entire roof area for entrapped water within roof assembly according to ASTM D7954/D7954M.
- a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
  - b. After testing, repair leaks, repeat tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
    - 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
  - c. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of entrapped moisture, if any.
4. Nuclear Hydrogen Detection Testing: Testing agency shall survey entire roof area for entrapped water within roof assembly according to ANSI/SPRI/RCI NT-1.
- a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
  - b. After testing, repair leaks, repeat tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
    - 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
  - c. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of entrapped moisture, if any.
5. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of initial discontinuities, if any.
- C. Test Cuts: Remove test specimens to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
1. Determine approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane according to ASTM D3617/D3617M.
  2. Examine test specimens for interply voids according to ASTM D3617/D3617M and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  3. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.

- 1. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- E. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- F. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 1. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.13 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
  - 1. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.14 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  - 1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
  - 2. Address: <Insert address>.
  - 3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
  - 4. Address: <Insert address>.
  - 5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
  - 6. Acceptance Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
  - 8. Expiration Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
  - a. lightning;
  - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 150mph
  - c. fire;
  - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
  - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
  - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
  - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

1. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Name: \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Title: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 075216

## SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

**Warranty Retention Process: Prior to any repairs being made, please submit a repair scope of work that will be performed on the roofs under guarantee. Once this is approved and the work is completed, pictures will need to be submitted of the completed repairs.**

**Local GAF representative:**  
**Jody Collins, PE RRO**  
**Territory Manager NC/SC**  
**Commercial Roofing Systems**  
**(m) 864-704-7405**  
**email: jody.collins@gaf.com**

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Roof insulation.
3. Walkways.

- B. Section includes installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Sound-absorbing insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."

## C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061007 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 076200.20 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.
4. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
  1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
  2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
  3. Flashing details at penetrations.
  4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
  5. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  1. Roof membrane and flashings, of color required.
- D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements. Uplift information is provided on sheet S001. Provide fastener pattern for each zone.



## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
  - 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
  - 2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, and other components of roofing system for the duration of the in place warranty.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, and, for the following warranty period:
  1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
  1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.

- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
  - 1. Zone 1 (Roof Area Field): See sheet S001.
  - 2. Zone 2 (Roof Area Perimeter): See sheet S001.
  - 3. Zone 3 (Roof Area Corners): See sheet S001.
- D. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

## 2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

- A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M.
  - 1. EverGuard TPO by GAF, Adhered to top layer of rigid insulation.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
  - 3. Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal.
  - 4. Exposed Face Color: White.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
  - 1. Adhesive: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.:
    - a. EverGuard® 1121 Solvent-Based Adhesive,
    - b. EverGuard® Low VOC Adhesive, or Ever-Guard®
    - c. WB181 Water-Based Adhesive
- B. Sheet Flashing: Match TPO field sheet.
- C. Slip Sheet: ASTM D2178/D2178M, Type IV; glass fiber; asphalt-impregnated felt.
- D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
- F. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick), prepunched.

- G. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer and uplift requirements.
- H. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories recommended by the manufacturer.

## 2.4 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assemblies.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces, match existing.
  - 1. Compressive Strength: 25 psi (172 kPa).
  - 2. Size: 48 by 48 inches (1219 by 1219 mm).
  - 3. Thickness:
    - a. Base Layer: 2-1/2 inches (or match existing).
    - b. Upper Layer: 1 inch (or match existing)
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
  - 1. Material: Match roof insulation.
  - 2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.35 mm).
  - 3. Slope:
    - a. Roof Field: [1/4 inch per foot (1:48)] unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Saddles and Crickets: [1/2 inch per foot (1:24)] unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

## 2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
  4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture, and that minimum concrete internal relative humidity is not more than 75 percent, or as recommended by roofing system manufacturer, when tested according to ASTM F2170.
    - a. Test Frequency: One test probe per each 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m), or portion thereof, of roof deck, with not less than three tests probes.
    - b. Submit test reports within 24 hours after performing tests.
  6. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
  7. Verify that joints in precast concrete roof decks have been grouted flush with top of concrete.
  8. Verify that minimum curing period recommended by roofing system manufacturer for lightweight insulating concrete roof decks has passed.
  9. Verify any damaged sections of cementitious wood-fiber decks have been repaired or replaced.
  10. Verify adjacent cementitious wood-fiber panels are vertically aligned to within 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at top surface.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Submit test result within 24 hours after performing tests.
    - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- D. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.
- B. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and roof insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
  - 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than **24 inches (610 mm)** in adjacent rows end joints staggered not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
    - b. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
    - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in width.
    - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches (610 mm)**.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - f. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
    - g. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    - h. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
    - i. Mechanically attach all layers of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
      - 1) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - 2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** from previous layer of insulation.

- a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in adjacent rows.
- b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in adjacent rows.
- c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
- d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width.
- e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches (610 mm).
  - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
- f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
- g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
  - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
  - 2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - 3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.

- B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- C. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.7 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.8 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  - 1. Owner: .
  - 2. Address: .
  - 3. Building Name/Type: .
  - 4. Address: .
  - 5. Area of Work: .
  - 6. Acceptance Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7. Warranty Period: .
  - 8. Expiration Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:



1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
  - a. lightning;
  - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding;
  - c. fire;
  - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
  - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
  - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
  - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
  
2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

1. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Name: \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Title: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 075423

## SECTION 076200.02 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section includes:

1. Low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
2. Miscellaneous sheet metal flashing and trim.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 07 low slope membrane roofing section for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing and for related warranty requirements.
2. Division 22 Section "Roof Drains" for roof drains incorporated in roof system.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

## B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
3. Indicate details meet requirements of SMACNA and NRCA required by this Section.
4. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

## C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI ES-1 tested.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranties: Manufacturer's executed warranty documents. Submit prior to acceptance of Work.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Flashings and Fastening: Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing sections. Provide base flashings, perimeter flashings, detail flashings and component materials and installation techniques that comply with requirements and recommendations of the following:
  - 1. FM Global 1-49: "Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Perimeter Flashings."

2. FM Global 1-29: "Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Above Deck Roof Components."
  3. NRCA: "The NRCA Roofing Manual" for construction details and recommendations.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
- ## 2.2 SHEET METALS
- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet according to ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet according to ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation, Grade 40 (Grade 275); with smooth, flat surface; prefinished by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      - 1) Color: CUSTOM COLOR TO MATCH EXISTING.
  2. Exposed Metallic Finish: Galvalume Plus.
  3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
1. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2D (dull, cold rolled).
- D. Lead Sheet: ASTM B749 lead sheet.
- ## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS
- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-

modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.

1. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) or lower.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated(Galvanized) and Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
  3. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  4. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Solder:
  1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60 or Grade Sn96, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
  2. For Copper: ASTM B32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.

- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane at concealed joints and silicone at exposed joints; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D1187.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

- G. Seams, Soldered: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- I. Seams for Uncoated Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- J. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cleats for Copings:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch/22 ga. (0.85 mm) thick.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch/22 ga. (0.85 mm) thick.
- B. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: (0.71 mm) 0.028 inch/24 ga. thick.
- C. Penetration Housing and Curb Caps: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: 14 ga. thick.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch/26 ga. (0.48 mm) thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- B. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.



## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - 2. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
  - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
  - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm); however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.

1. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
2. Do not use torches for soldering.

### 3.3 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements and cited sheet metal standard.
  1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
  2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
  1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
  2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing.
  3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches (100 mm).
- C. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200.02



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof curbs.
  - 2. Pipe portals.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Delegated-Design Submittal: For roof curbs and equipment supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof-mounted items to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
  - 2. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design roof curbs and equipment supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Seismic and Wind-Restraint Performance requirements: Refer to Section 230548.

### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Refer to Section 230548.

### 2.3 PIPE PORTALS

- A. Curb-Mounted Pipe Portal: Insulated roof-curb units with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom; with weathertight curb cover with single or multiple collared openings and pressure-sealed conically shaped EPDM protective rubber caps sized for piping indicated, with stainless-steel snaplock swivel clamps.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPAC2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. Underlayment:
  - 1. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  - 2. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- E. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  - 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg.
  - 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
  - 2. Substrate primers.
  - 3. Collars.
  - 4. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- B. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- D. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- E. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- F. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- G. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- H. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

### 2.4 MIXING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.

1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.

C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

## 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

## 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 1001-1999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- C. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 2001-2999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- D. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Electrical Cables:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 3001-3999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- E. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Cable Trays with Electric Cables:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 4001-4999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- F. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Insulated Pipes:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. UL-Classified Systems: 5001-5999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- G. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 6001-6999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- H. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 7001-7999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- I. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 8001-8999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.

END OF SECTION 078413

## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079100 "Preformed Joint Seals" for preformed compressible foam and precured joint seals.
2. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.
3. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in paved roads, parking lots, walkways, and curbing.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data:

1. Joint-sealants.
2. Joint sealant backing materials.

## B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** wide joints formed between two **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

## D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant formulation.
4. Joint-sealant color.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

## A. Test and Evaluation Reports:

1. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
  - a. Joint-sealant location and designation.

- b. Manufacturer and product name.
    - c. Type of substrate material.
    - d. Proposed test.
    - e. Number of samples required.
  2. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: For each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested from sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
    - a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    - b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
  3. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- B. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
1. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- C. Sample warranties.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty Documentation:
1. Manufacturers' special warranties.
  2. Installer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
1. Installers: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
  2. Testing Agency: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.



4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:

- a. Concrete.
  - b. Masonry.
  - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.

3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings in accordance with Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints between metal panels.
    - b. Joints between different material.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

## SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Gypsum ceiling board.

## 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.2 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: Match existing.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

## 2.3 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  - 2. Mold-Resistant Type: Bathroom Ceilings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  - 2. Bullnose Bead: Use at outside corners.
  - 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 5. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 6. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.

### 3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.



- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  - 1. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 095123 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS – INSTALLATION OF REMOVED SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Reinstallation of removed acoustical tiles.
  - 2. Reinstallation of removed suspension systems.
  - 3. Installation of acoustical tiles in kitchen.

## 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

## 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for

compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before adhesively bonding tiles to wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C636/C636M to match installation standards of existing system.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.

7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
  2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced 12 inches (305 mm) o.c.
  3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts according to requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## 2.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.

2.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095123

## SECTION 099124 - INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
  - 1. Gypsum board new and existing, previously painted.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Product List: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 25 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: Match existing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates: Verify that surfaces are dry.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.



4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry-Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry-film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry-film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry-film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Gypsum Board Substrates:
1. Latex over Latex Sealer System, MPI INT 9.2A:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.

END OF SECTION 099124

## SECTION 112429.03 - FACILITY FALL PROTECTION, NON-PENETRATING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

## A. Non-penetrating fall protection systems, including:

1. Roof edge rail systems.
2. Roof hatch rail systems.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

## A. General: Applicable edition of references cited in this Section is current edition published on date of issue of Project specifications, unless otherwise required by building code in force.

## B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. A21.1 - Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toe Boards.
2. A58.1 - Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures.
3. A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.

## C. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):

1. 29 CFR 1910.28 - Duty to have fall protection and falling object protection.
2. 29 CFR 1910.29 - Fall protection systems and falling object protection - criteria and practices.

## D. Association for Materials Protection and Performance (AMPP):

1. SSPC PAINT 20: Organic Zinc Rich Primer, Type II.
2. SSPC PA 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

## A. Coordinate selection of fall protection and fall restraint devices and attachment provisions with Owner's safety program and Owner-provided personal protection equipment.

## B. Coordinate layout and location of facility fall protection with Architect.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For each type of fall protection and accessory, including brackets and fasteners.

1. Submit manufacturer's published literature including structural properties data, corrosion resistance, certificates of compliance, and test reports as applicable.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and layout of fall protection components; include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details of installation.
  1. Provide shop drawings signed and sealed by a professional engineer, licensed in the jurisdiction of the project.
- C. Samples for Verification: Not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long, of each component in finish indicated.

#### 1.5 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E894 and ASTM E935.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
- B. Executed copies of warranty.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E329; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver manufactured materials in original, unbroken pallets, packages, containers, or bundles bearing the label of the manufacturer.
- B. Store and handle materials carefully to prevent abrasion, cracking, chipping, twisting, other deformations, and other types of damage.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: RailGuard 200 Safety Guardrail - Non-Penetrating Preformed Safety Guardrail System by Garlock Safety Systems. 877.969.6608 | 2601 Niagara Ln N | Plymouth, MN 55447
  1. Manufacturer of comparable products:
    - a. CAI Safety Systems - Steel Non-penetrating Guardrails (951) 465-7386 | <https://caisafety.com> | [webstore@caisafety.com](mailto:webstore@caisafety.com)
    - b. SafetyRail 2000 Roof Edge Protection by Tractel Ltd., which is located at: 1615 Warden Ave.; Scarborough, ON, Canada M1R 2T3; Tel: 416-298-8822; ; Bluewater; 952-448-2935; ; Fabenco; 713-686-6620; ; Email:request info (marketing.swingstage@tractel.com);  
Web:<http://www.tractel.com>|<https://www.tractel.com/us>
  - B. Single Source: Provide fall protection components from a single manufacturer through a single source, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Occupational Safety and Health Standards: Provide fall protection components complying with requirements of 29 CFR 1910.28 and 1910.29 including structural performance.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

### 2.3 RAIL SYSTEMS, NON-PENETRATING

- A. Fall Protection Rail Systems: Freestanding counterweighted fall protection safety railing system including pipe or tubing, fittings, and accessories corresponding to design indicated on Drawings, and complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Basis of Design Product: RailGuard 200 Safety Guardrail.
  2. Configuration/System:
    - a. Roof edge protection: RailGuard 200 Safety Guardrail.

3. Application: Flat or low slope roof.
  - a. Maximum Slope without Parapet: (0.5:12).
4. Uprights: 42-inch (1067-mm) by 1.5625-inch (41-mm) steel pipe factory assembled with manufacturer's standard clamp fittings accepting railings, adjustable up to 11 deg. from vertical.
5. Mounting Bases: Class 30 gray iron material cast with four receiver posts, with anti-skid rubber pad base.
  - a. Receiver Posts: Shall have a positive locking system into slots that allow rails to be mounted in any direction. Friction locking systems are not allowed. Receiver posts shall have drain holes.
6. Railings: 1-5/8-inch (41-mm) OD, hot-rolled, pickled, electric weld tubing, free of sharp edges and snag points.
  - a. Top Rail Height = 42" tall; Mid-Rail Height = 20" tall
7. Upright and Railing Finish: Galvanized, with powder-coated finish.
8. Accessories: Provide manufacturer's standard accessories, with clamping hardware, pre-formed corners, and splice kits, in finish to match railings

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard hardware as required for a complete installation; corrosion resistant, and identical to hardware utilized in tested assemblies meeting performance requirements.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

#### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- B. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- C. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
- D. Form changes in direction by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- E. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- F. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Toe Boards: Provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided roofs and platforms.

## 2.6 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
- B. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
- C. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that roof assembly is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, securely anchored and ready for placement of fall protection.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for the substrate, under the project conditions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF NON-PENETRATING FALL PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Install fall protection to comply with requirements of 29 CFR 1910.28 and 1910.29, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install fall protection in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set fall protection components accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 2. Set components plumb within a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 3 feet (4 mm in 1 m).
  - 3. Align horizontal members so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).
- D. Test action of operable components of facility fall protection equipment. Adjust for proper operation.

- E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- F. Coordinate review of installation by Owner's safety director or designated representative prior to turnover to Owner.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Extent and Testing Methodology: Testing agency will randomly select completed railing assemblies for testing that are representative of different railing designs and conditions in the completed Work. Test railings according to ASTM E894 and ASTM E935 for compliance with performance requirements.
- B. Remove and replace railings where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements unless they can be repaired in a manner satisfactory to Architect and comply with specified requirements.
- C. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.5 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
  - 3. Replace components that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 112429.03



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230130.52 - EXISTING HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning existing HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ACAC: American Council for Accredited Certification.
- B. ASCS: Air systems cleaning specialist.
- C. CESB: Council of Engineering and Scientific Specialty Boards.
- D. CMI: Certified Microbial Investigator.
- E. CMC: Certified Microbial Consultant.
- F. CMR: Certified Microbial Remediator.
- G. CMRS: Certified Microbial Remediation Supervisor.
- H. EMLAP: Environmental Microbiology Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- I. IEP: Indoor Environmental Professional.
- J. IICRC: Institute of Inspection, Cleaning, and Restoration Certification.
- K. NADCA: National Air Duct Cleaners Association.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Cleaning agents

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

### A. Qualification Data:

1. For an ASCS.
2. For an IEP.
3. For a CMR and a CMRS.

### B. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Project's existing conditions.
2. Evaluations and recommendations, including cleanliness verification.
3. Strategies and procedures plan.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Post-Project report.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. ASCS Qualifications: A certified member of NADCA.

1. Certification: Employ an ASCS certified by NADCA on a full-time basis.
2. Supervisor Qualifications: Certified as an ASCS by NADCA.

### B. IEP Qualifications: CMI who is certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.

### C. IEP Qualifications: CMC who is certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.

### D. CMR Qualifications: Certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.

### E. CMRS Qualifications: Certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.

### F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 181 and UL 181A for fibrous-glass ducts.

### G. Cleaning Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to HVAC air-distribution system cleaning, including, but not limited to, review of the cleaning strategies and procedures plan.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HVAC CLEANING AGENTS

#### A. Description:

1. Formulated for each specific soiled condition that needs remedy.
2. Will not corrode or tarnish aluminum, copper, or other metals.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 ANTIMICROBIAL SURFACE TREATMENT

- A. Description: Specific product selected shall be as recommended by the IEP based on the specific antimicrobial needs of the specific Project conditions.
  - 1. Formulated to kill and inhibit growth of microorganisms.
  - 2. EPA-registered for use in HVAC systems and for the specific application in which it will be used.
  - 3. Have no residual action after drying, with zero VOC off-gassing.
  - 4. OSHA compliant.
  - 5. Treatment shall dry clear to allow continued visual observation of the treated surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components to determine appropriate methods, tools, and equipment required for performance of the Work.
- B. Perform "Project Evaluation and Recommendation" according to NADCA ACR.
- C. Cleaning Plan: Prepare a written plan for air-distribution system cleaning that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures. At a minimum, include the following:
  - 1. Supervisor contact information.
  - 2. Work schedule, including location, times, and impact on occupied areas.
  - 3. Methods and materials planned for each HVAC component type.
  - 4. Required support from other trades.
  - 5. Equipment and material storage requirements.
  - 6. Exhaust equipment setup locations.
- D. Existing Conditions Report: Prepare a written report that documents existing conditions of the systems and equipment. Include documentation of existing conditions, including inspection results, photo images, laboratory results, and interpretations of the laboratory results by an IEP.
  - 1. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with work only after conditions detrimental to performance of the Work have been corrected.
- F. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
- G. Comply with NADCA ACR, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.
- H. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.2 CLEANING

- A. Comply with NADCA ACR, including items identified as "recommended," "advised," and "suggested."
- B. Perform electrical lockout and tagout according to Owner's standards or authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Remove non-adhered substances and deposits from within the HVAC system.
- D. Complete cleaning in accordance with Owner-Contractor agreed-upon scope of work.
- E. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned: All air-moving and -distribution equipment.
- F. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
  - 1. Air devices for supply and return air.
  - 2. Ductwork:
    - a. Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes and reheat coils, to the air-handling unit.
    - b. Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
    - c. Exhaust-air ducts.
    - d. Transfer ducts.
- G. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
- H. Particulate Collection:
  - 1. For particulate collection equipment, include adequate filtration to contain debris removed. Locate equipment downwind and away from all air intakes and other points of entry into the building.
  - 2. HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for particles sized 0.3 micrometer or larger shall be used where the particulate collection equipment is exhausting inside the building,
- I. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
- J. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
- K. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
- L. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
- M. Air-Distribution Systems:
  - 1. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Mechanically clean air-distribution systems specified to remove all visible contaminants, so that the systems can pass the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR).
- N. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.
- O. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.
    - a. Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
    - b. Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials, such as duct and plenum liners.
  2. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:
    - a. Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR.
    - b. Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR).
    - c. Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

### 3.3 CLEANLINESS VERIFICATION

- A. Verify cleanliness according to NADCA ACR, "Verification of HVAC System Cleanliness" Section.
- B. Verify HVAC system cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before applying any treatment or introducing any treatment-related substance to the HVAC system, including biocidal agents and coatings.
- C. Surface-Cleaning Verification: Perform visual inspection for cleanliness. If no contaminants are evident through visual inspection, the HVAC system shall be considered clean. If visible contaminants are evident through visual inspection, those portions of the system where contaminants are visible shall be re-cleaned and subjected to re-inspection for cleanliness.
- D. Additional Verification:
  1. Perform surface comparison testing or NADCA vacuum test.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Conduct NADCA vacuum gravimetric test analysis for nonporous surfaces.
- E. Prepare a written cleanliness verification report. At a minimum, include the following:
1. Written documentation of the success of the cleaning.
  2. Site inspection reports, initialed by supervisor, including notation on areas of inspection, as verified through visual inspection.
  3. Surface comparison test results if required.
  4. Gravimetric analysis (nonporous surfaces only).
  5. System areas found to be damaged.

### 3.4 RESTORATION

- A. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
- B. Restore service openings capable of future reopening. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- C. Replace fibrous-glass materials that cannot be restored by cleaning or resurfacing. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- D. Replace damaged insulation according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- E. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.
- F. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.
- G. Restore manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system to their marked position on completion of cleaning.

### 3.5 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Post-Project Report:
  1. Post-cleaning laboratory results if any.
  2. Post-cleaning photo images.
  3. Post-cleaning verification summary.
- B. Drawings:
  1. Deviations of existing system from Owner's record drawings.
  2. Location of service openings.

END OF SECTION 230130.52

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal fittings.
3. Grout.
4. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  2. CALPICO, Inc.
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
  - 4. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
  
- B. Description:
  - 1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
  - 2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
  
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
  
- B. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- C. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.
  - 3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.

END OF SECTION 230517

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Plastic pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation and seismic restraint devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Metal framing systems.
2. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

### 2.3 PLASTIC PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of plastic.
- B. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
- C. Flammability: ASTM D 635, ASTM E 84, and UL 94.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
  - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted extruded-aluminum channel with inturred lips.
  - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer.
  - 7. Metallic Coating: Pregalvanized G90.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

## 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

## 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  - 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  - 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  2. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Restrained roof-curbs.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
  3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacing. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
  - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Refer to Drawings Title Sheet for Seismic and Wind restraint design criteria.
- B. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

### 2.2 SEISMIC AND WIND RESISTANT ROOF-CURBS AND EQUIPMENT RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 2. Kinetics Noise Control.
  - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Thybar Corporation.
  - 5. Amber Booth
  - 6. Industrial Sheet Metal
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curbs designed to support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. The frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and piping and shall resist seismic and wind forces. The support assembly shall be formed of all welded galvanized sheet metal. The support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of vibration isolators and seismic restraints shall not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- C. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD that provides required submittals for component.
- D. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams or at upper truss chords of bar joists.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect installation of seismic restraint and wind resistant roof curbs and equipment rails and connections between supported equipment and curbs and rails and connections between curbs and rails and roof structure for compliance with IBC 2015 requirements.
  - 2. Schedule inspections with Contractor through the Program Manager with at least seven days' advance notice.

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230548

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels
  - 3. Pipe labels.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 2 inches for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 3 inches for viewing distances up to 72 inches , and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 5 by 3 inches.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 2 inches for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 3 inches for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1 on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-black background.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL

- A. TAB specialist will be contracted directly through Horry County Schools (HCS) and not included in contractor's bid. The contractor is expected to coordinate work with TAB specialist.
- B. Project requires that the entire air side of all mechanical units and systems for all systems being replaced in the School to be fully tested, adjusted and balanced (TAB) as specified in this Section including, but not limited to all equipment, fans, coils, heat recovery devices, and air distribution devices (grilles and registers) whether new or existing.
- C. Copies of HCS Record Drawings indicating existing system configuration are available for information only upon request. The accuracy of those documents is not guaranteed.
- D. TAB agent shall visit the Project site prior to bidding and verify the number of air distribution devices and existing conditions at the site. No additional cost after bidding for TAB work will be allowed for claims of insufficient information or differing site conditions from what is shown on the existing Record Drawings.
- E. Record Drawings of all the existing interior HVAC systems are not available.
- F. TAB agent shall mark a hard copy a set of the existing Record Floor Plans and indicate where existing equipment and air distribution devices are located. Markup of duct layouts will not be required. At Project Closeout, all hard copies of TAB agent markups to Record Drawings shall be scanned into PDF format and included in the electronic closeout document submittal.

#### 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Single-Zone Variable-air-volume systems.
  - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. Motors.
    - b. Heat-transfer coils.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
4. Control system verification.

## 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting the qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

## 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. As selected by HCS

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Duct systems are complete.
- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete, and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance," ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation,".
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at air distribution devices and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 4. Obtain approval from Program Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Calibrate and balance each Rooftop Single-Zone VAV Unit (RTUs, HPs and DHSs) for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    - a. Adjust controls so that unit is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets.
    - d. Adjust controls so that unit is calling for minimum airflow.
    - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  2. After unit fan speeds have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Set unit for maximum airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at air distribution devices with a calibrated airflow hood and calculate the total airflow.
3. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  4. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
    - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Verify that units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
  5. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
    - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
    - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
    - d. Mark final settings.
    - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
    - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil and heat transfer device:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Entering and leaving air side static pressure.
4. Airflow.

### 3.10 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.
  - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  - 4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.12 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.13 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.14 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
  
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Fan curves.
  - 2. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
  
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.
  - 7. Contractor's name and address.
  - 8. Report date.
  - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  - 13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  - 14. Test conditions for fans performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  4. Balancing stations.
  5. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - j. Return airflow in cfm.
    - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    - l. Return-air damper position.
    - m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft..
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil identification.
    - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
    - e. Number of stages.
    - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - g. Rated amperage.
    - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - i. Face area in sq. ft..
    - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
    - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - c. Air velocity in fpm.
    - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
    - f. Voltage at each connection.
    - g. Amperage for each phase.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.15 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Program Manager and/or commissioning authority.
- B. Program Manager and/or Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
  - 3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-03/11-70.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

## 2.3 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-03/11-90.
  - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

### 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

### 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

### 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Metal Jacket:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless-Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - 3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

### 2.9 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  - 2. Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

### 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316; 0.015-inch-thick, ¾ inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
    - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030-inch-thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

### 2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040-inch-thick, minimum 1x1-inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- B. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024-inch-thick, minimum 1x1-inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **2 inches** o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
  - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
  - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

limited to one location for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 2. Vibration-control devices.
  - 3. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

## 3.9 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, round return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

## 3.10 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Exposed duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Closed Cell Foam Rubber: 2 inches with aluminum cover.

## 3.11 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
  - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
  - 1. Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.040 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturer: Pittsburgh Corning Corporation, or engineer approved equal.

2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.

3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.

4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.

5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.

6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.

7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following manufacturers:

a. Armacell LLC

b. Aeroflex USA, Inc.

c. K-Flex USA.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

b. Knauf Insulation.

c. Manson Insulation Inc.

d. Owens Corning.

2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

### 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
  
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  
- E. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Vimasco Corporation.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F .
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
    - f. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

### 1.2 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.3 SEALANTS

### A. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Joint Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.

### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 1.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

## 1.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

## 1.6 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

- 1. Width: 3 inches.
- 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

## 1.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

- 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
- 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 2.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
- a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

## 2.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 2.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

7. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.

4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 2.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.

2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 2.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 2.9 FINISHES

- ### A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
  - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 2.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to **three** locations of straight pipe, **three** locations of threaded valves,
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 2.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate Drain Water below 60 Deg F :
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
    - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

## 2.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: **2 inches** thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: **2 inches** thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **2 inches** thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **2 inches** thick.

## 2.14 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
  2. Aluminum with Z-Shaped Locking Seam:

END OF SECTION 230719

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 230923 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.01 Work Included:

- A. General - This project requires the modification and upgrade of an existing Siemens Apogee Building Automation System (BAS). At the completion of these modifications and upgrades a fully integrated and fully functional Web Based Building Automation System (BAS), incorporating direct digital control (DDC) for energy management, equipment monitoring and control, lighting control, utility monitoring and subsystems with open communications capabilities as herein specified shall be designed, furnished, installed, started up, tested, commissioned and turned over to the Horry County Schools (HCS). The owner (HCS) will contract directly with CMI for providing the Building Management System (BMS) work under this Section. The contractor will be expected to coordinate their work with CMI. CMI will be responsible for the following:
1. Provide complete upgraded DDC HVAC controls system with electric actuation and repair integration with existing Lighting control systems.
  2. Provide all wiring, conduit, panels, and accessories for a complete operational system.
  3. Be responsible for all electrical work associated with the BMS.
    - a. Perform all wiring in accordance with all local and national codes.
    - b. Install all line voltage wiring, concealed or exposed, in conduit in accordance with the division 26 specifications, NEC and local building code.
    - c. Provide extension of 120 volt, 20 amp circuits and circuit breakers from Emergency power panels for all BMS equipment power. Provide and install local UPS Power supply for all BMS system panels and equipment.
    - d. Provide transient surge protection incorporated in design of system to protect electrical components in all DDC Controllers and operator's workstations.
    - e. Route all low voltage electrical control wiring throughout the building whether in exposed areas in conduit in accordance with the division 26 specifications, local building code and the NEC.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- f. Provide all miscellaneous field device mounting and interconnecting wiring for all mechanical and designated electrical systems including, but not limited to, Packaged Roof Mounted, Air Cooled Variable Air Volume (VAV) SPAC Units, Packaged Air Cooled DHS outdoor air units, Packaged Roof Mounted Air Cooled Heat Pumps (SPHP's), VAV Terminal Units, Lighting Control Panels and Interfaces, Power Monitoring and Domestic Water Monitoring equipment.
    - g. All systems requiring interlock wiring shall be hardwired interlocked and shall not rely on the BMS to operate (e.g. smoke detectors to fire alarm system) Interlock wiring shall be run in separate conduits from BMS associated wiring.
  4. Provide all thermowells for water monitoring devices, flow switches and alarms, as required.
    - a. All installation kits for turbine flow meters shall allow service and removal under pressure.
  5. Provide open communications system. The system shall be an open architecture with the capabilities to support a multi-vendor environment. To accomplish this effectively, system shall be capable of utilizing standard protocols as follows as well as be able to integrate third-party systems via existing vendor protocols.
    - a. System shall be capable of high speed Ethernet communication using TCP/IP protocol.
    - b. System shall be capable of BACnet communication according to ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004.
    - c. System shall be capable of OPC server communications according to OPC Data Access 2.0 and Alarms and Events 1.0.
    - d. System shall be capable of using the LonTalk protocol.
    - e. The system shall be capable of supporting both standard and vendor specific protocols to integrate a wide variety of third-party devices and legacy systems.
    - f. The intent is to either use the Operator Workstation provided under this contract to communicate with control systems provided by other vendors or to allow information about the system provided in this contract to be sent to another workstation. This allows the user to have a single seat from which to perform daily operation.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. Provide hardware, software, and wiring to provide communication interfaces with each of the systems listed below.
  - a. Existing Systems and Equipment currently being controlled or monitored that are not affected by the HVAC systems and equipment being upgraded and replaced under this Contract.
  - b. Packaged Roof Mounted HVAC Equipment (RTUs, HPs, DHSs)
  - c. Power Monitoring
  - d. Domestic Water Monitoring
  - e. Fire Alarm System
7. Provide system graphics for each controlled device and/or integrated systems. Origin of information shall be transparent to the operator and shall be controlled, displayed, and trended as if the points were hardwired to the BMS.
8. Provide primary DDC panels as follows (Note – existing DDC panels shall remain in use if compatible with new equipment controls and BACnet interfaces):
  - a. Minimum one (1) BMS system Primary DDC panel per floor. The application specific controllers installed for the terminal units on a floor will be connected to the BMS panel on the same floor.
  - b. Minimum one (1) BMS system Primary DDC panel per each major mechanical system:
    - 1) RTU, HP, WH and DOAS
  - c. It is acceptable to combine up to three (3) of the following mechanical equipment into one (1) Primary DDC panel:
    - 1) Exhaust Fans
    - 2) Standalone Supply Fans
    - 3) Package AC Units
  - d. It is acceptable to wire the following systems into any of the Primary DDC panels:
    - 1) Miscellaneous alarm monitoring (i.e. ATS, leak, temperature, light ...etc.)
    - 2) Miscellaneous equipment (i.e. Unit Heater, Domestic Water Heater, Standalone Dampers ...etc.)
9. Provide stand-alone Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) for terminal equipment (VAV terminal units).

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### B. General product description

1. The installation of the control system shall be performed under the direct supervision of the controls manufacturer with the shop drawings, flow diagrams, bill of materials, component designation, or identification number and sequence of operation all bearing the name of the manufacturer. The installing manufacturer shall certify in writing, that the shop drawings have been prepared by the equipment manufacturer and that the equipment manufacturer has supervised their installation. In addition, the equipment manufacturer shall certify, in writing, that the shop drawings were prepared by their company and that all temperature control equipment was installed under their direct supervision.
2. The installation of the control system shall be performed under the direct supervision of the contractor providing the work under this Section.
3. The shop drawings, flow diagrams, bill of materials, component designation, or identification number and sequence of operation shall all bear the name of the control system manufacturer and the contractor providing the work under this Section.
4. The Contractor providing the work of this Section shall certify in writing, that the shop drawings have been prepared according to the equipment manufacturer's guidelines.
5. All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured for this and/or other systems and not custom designed especially for this project. All systems and components shall have been thoroughly tested and proven in actual use for at least two years.
6. The system shall be scalable in nature and shall permit expansion of both capacity and functionality through the addition of sensors, actuators, DDC Controllers, and operator devices.
7. System architectural design shall eliminate dependence upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution. Each DDC Controller shall operate independently by performing its own specified control, alarm management, operator I/O, and data collection. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of any control strategy, reporting, alarming and trending function, or any function at any operator interface device.
8. DDC Controllers shall be able to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other DDC Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

central or intermediate processing device. DDC Controllers shall also be able to send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device.

9. DDC Controllers shall be able to assign password access and control priorities to each point individually. The Logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust or control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the PC workstation or portable terminal. Passwords and priority levels for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
10. All DDC controllers shall be installed with 25% spare points (of each type) and 25% spare memory capacity for connection of floor work.

### 1.02 Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section

#### A. Hydronic Piping:

1. Flow Meters

#### B. Refrigerant Piping:

1. Pressure and Temperature Sensor Wells and Sockets

#### C. Duct-work Accessories:

1. Dampers
2. Air-flow Stations
3. Terminal Unit Controls

### 1.03 Products Integrated To but Not Furnished or Installed Under This Section

#### A. Packaged Rooftop HVAC Equipment:

1. Discharge Air Temperature Control
2. Economizer Control
3. Volume Control

#### B. Variable Frequency Drives

#### C. BACnet System:

1. Server
2. Client



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. OPC Client
- E. LonMark Devices
- F. Fire/Life Safety
- G. Power/Energy Monitoring

### 1.04 Related Sections

- A. The General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, General Requirements and all Technical Sections in the Project manual are part of this specification and shall be used in conjunction with this section as part of the contract documents.

### 1.05 Approved Control System Contractors and Managers

- A. The following are the approved Control System Contractors and Manufacturers:
  - 1. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc. – Product Line: APOGEE System as furnished and installed by Control Management, Inc. (CMI). No substitutions allowed.

### 1.06 Quality Assurance

- A. The BAS system shall be designed and installed, commissioned and serviced by factory trained personnel. The contractor providing the work under this Section shall have an in-place support facility within 25 miles of the site with technical staff, spare parts inventory and necessary test and diagnostic equipment. Provide a full time, on site, experienced project manager for this work, responsible for direct supervision of the design, installation, start up and commissioning of the BMS.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be the catalogued products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of automatic temperature control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
- C. All BAS peer-to-peer network controllers, central system controllers, and local user displays shall be UL Listed under Standard UL 916, category PAZX; Standard ULC C100, category UUKL7; and under Standard UL 864, categories UUKL, UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of bid. All floor level controllers shall comply, at a minimum, with UL Standard UL 916 category PAZX; Standard UL 864, categories UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of Bid.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. The BAS peer-to-peer network controllers and local user display shall also comply with the European Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Framework, and bear the C-Tic Mark to show compliance. The purpose of the regulation is to minimize electromagnetic interference between electronic products, which may diminish the performance of electrical products or disrupt essential communications.
- E. DDC peer-to-peer controllers shall be compliant with the European EMC Directive, Standards EN 50081-2 and EN 50082-2, at the Industrial Levels. Additionally the equipment shall be compliant with the European LVD Directive and bear the CE mark in order to show compliance to both directives.
- F. All electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be labeled.
- G. All wireless devices shall conform to:
  - 1. The requirements of Title 47 of the Code of Federal Regulations, FCC Part 15, governing radio frequency intentional radiating devices and be issued a FCC user identification and be so labeled. CE Directive 1999/5/EC (Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the Mutual Recognition of their Conformity) [ID: 108]
- H. The manufacturer of the building automation system shall provide documentation supporting compliance with ISO-9002 (Model for Quality Assurance in Production, Installation, and Servicing) and ISO-140001 (The application of well-accepted business management principles to the environment). The intent of this specification requirement is to ensure that the products from the manufacturer are delivered through a Quality System and Framework that will assure consistency in the products delivered for this project.
- I. This system shall have a documented history of compatibility by design for a minimum of 15 years. Future compatibility shall be supported for no less than 10 years. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability to upgrade existing field panels to current level of technology, and extend new field panels on a previously installed network. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability for any existing field panel microprocessor to be connected to and directly communicate with new field panels without bridges, routers or protocol converters.

### 1.07 Codes and Standards

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the most restrictive of local, state, and federal authorities' codes and ordinances or these plans and

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:

1. National Electric Code (NEC), 2014 Edition
2. International Building Code (IBC), 2015 Edition
3. International Mechanical Code (IMC), 2015 Edition
4. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135- 2004, BACnet--A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks
5. ASHRAE 90.1, 2013 Edition

### 1.08 System Performance

- A. Performance Standards. System shall conform to the following minimum standards over network connections. Systems shall be tested using manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for operator workstation (server and browser for web-based systems).
1. Graphic Display. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall display with current data within 10 sec.
  2. Graphic Refresh. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall update with current data within 8 sec. and shall automatically refresh every 15 sec.
  3. Configuration and Tuning Screens. Screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, control loops, and similar control logic shall automatically refresh within 6 sec.
  4. Alarm Response Time. An object that goes into alarm shall be annunciated at the workstation within 15 sec.
  5. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
  6. Performance. Programmable controllers shall be able to completely execute DDC control loops at a frequency adjustable down to once per sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
  7. Multiple Alarm Annunciations. Each workstation on the network shall receive alarms within 5 sec of other workstations.
  8. Reporting Accuracy. System shall report values with minimum end-to-end accuracy as listed in Table 1.
  9. Control Stability and Accuracy. Control loops shall maintain measured variable at setpoint within industry accepted tolerances.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.09 Submittals

- A. Product Submittal Requirements. Meet requirements of Section 013300 on Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples. Provide electronic copies of shop drawings and other submittals on hardware, software, and equipment to be installed or furnished. Begin no work until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. Provide drawings as AutoCAD 2004 (or newer) compatible files (file format: .pdf). When manufacturer's cutsheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, clearly indicate applicable data by highlighting or by other means. Clearly reference covered specification and drawing on each submittal. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cut sheets to fulfill submittal requirements. Select and show submittal quantities appropriate to scope of work.
- B. Provide submittals within 4 weeks of contract award
- C. Submittal data shall consist of the following:
  - 1. Direct Digital Control System Hardware:
    - a. Complete bill of materials indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment to be used.
    - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data, such as product specification sheets, installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items not listed below:
      - 1) Direct Digital Controllers (controller panels)
      - 2) Transducers and transmitters
      - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
      - 4) Valves
      - 5) Dampers
      - 6) Relays and Switches
      - 7) Control Panels
      - 8) Power Supplies
      - 9) Operator Interface Equipment
    - c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show all termination numbers.
    - d. Floor plan schematic diagrams indicating control panel and space temperature sensor locations.
  - 2. Central System Hardware and Software:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Complete bill of material indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment used.
  - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as product specifications for items listed below and for relevant items furnished under this contract not listed below:
    - 1) Interface Equipment Between CPU and Control Panels
    - 2) Operating System Software
    - 3) Operator Interface Software
    - 4) Color Graphic Software
    - 5) Third-Party Software
  - c. Schematic diagrams of all control, communication, and power wiring for central system installation. Show interface wiring to control system.
  - d. Provide sample color graphics for each typical system indicating conceptual layout of pictures and data for each graphic. List of color graphics to be provided showing or explaining which other graphics can be directly accessed.
  - e. Provide a list of BMS point naming convention. Indicate the format, structure and standards of typical point names. Provide a list of point names for typical equipment and functions with specific examples.
3. Controlled Systems:
- a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
  - b. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Label control points with point names. Graphically show locations of control elements.
  - c. Schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals. Where a control element is also shown on control system schematic use the same name.
  - d. Instrumentation list for each controlled system. List control system element in a table. Show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- e. Complete description of control system operation including sequences of operation. Include and reference schematic diagram of controlled system.
  - f. Point list for each system controller including both inputs and outputs (I/O), point numbers, controlled device associated with each I/O point, and location of I/O device. List shall include all BACnet points derived from equipment manufacturer and third party interfaces.
4. Description of process, report formats and checklists to be used in Part 3: “Control System Demonstration and Acceptance.”
5. Submit documentation in the following phased delivery schedule:
- a. Valve and damper schedules
  - b. Point Naming Convention
  - c. Sample Graphics
  - d. System schematics, including:
    - 1) System Riser Diagrams
    - 2) Sequence of Operations
    - 3) Mechanical Control Schematics
    - 4) Electrical Wiring Diagrams
    - 5) Control Panel Layouts
    - 6) Product Specification Sheets
  - e. As-Built drawings
- D. Schedules:
- 1. Schedule of work provided within one month of contract award indicating:
    - a. Intended sequence of work item.
    - b. Start dates of each work item.
    - c. Duration of each work item.
    - d. Planned delivery dates for ordered material and equipment and expected lead times.
    - e. Milestones indicating possible restraints on work by other trades or situations.
  - 2. Monthly written status reports indicating work completed and revisions to expected delivery. Include updated schedule of work.
- E. Project Record Documents: Submit three copies of record (as-built) documents upon completion of installation. Submittal shall consist of:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Project Record Drawings. As-built versions of the submittal shop drawings provided as AutoCAD 2004 (or newer) compatible files via Dropbox, Google Drive or similar online file storage and transfer website and one copy as 11” x 17” prints.
2. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists. Completed versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs used to meet requirements of Part 3: “Control System Demonstration and Acceptance.”
3. Operation and Maintenance (O & M) Manual.
  - a. As-built versions of the submittal product data.
  - b. Names, addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of installing contractors and service representatives for equipment and control systems.
  - c. Operator’s Manual with procedures for operating control systems, logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
  - d. Programming manual or set of manuals with description of programming language and of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
  - e. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manual or set of manuals that explains how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; how to perform preventive maintenance and calibration; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware.
  - f. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language, including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
  - g. Graphic files, programs, and database on magnetic or optical media.
  - h. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
  - i. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware, including computer equipment and sensors.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- j. Complete original original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
  - k. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
  - l. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- F. Training Materials. Provide course outline and manuals at least six weeks before training.

### 1.10 Warranty

- A. Warrant labor and materials for specified control system free from defects for a period of 12 months after final acceptance. Failures on control systems that include all computer equipment, transmission equipment and all sensors and control devices during warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner. Respond during normal business hours within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
- B. Work shall have a single warranty date, even if Owner receives beneficial use due to early system start-up. If specified work is split into multiple contracts or a multi-phase contract, each contract or phase shall have a separate warranty start date and period.
- C. Provide updates to operator workstation software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware that resolve identified software deficiencies at no charge during warranty period. If available, Owner can purchase in-warranty service agreement to receive upgrades for functional enhancements associated with the above-mentioned items. Do not install updates or upgrades without Owner's written authorization.
- D. Exception:
  - 1. Reused devices are not required to be warranted, except those that have been rebuilt or repaired. Installation labor and materials shall be warranted. Demonstrate operable condition of reused devices at time of Engineer's acceptance.

### 1.11 Ownership of Proprietary Material



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- A. Project specific software and documentation shall become Owner's property. This includes, but not limited to:
  - 1. Graphics
  - 2. Record drawings
  - 3. Database
  - 4. Application programming code
- B. Documentation
  - 1. General
    - a. Provide completely Web-based electronic project documentation in addition to the hard copy owner's manual by utilizing Internet Web access. The electronic project documentation shall be accessible for authorized personnel anytime from anywhere requiring only a simple Internet access.
    - b. Submit electronic draft copy of owner's manuals for review. After review by authorized representative, incorporate review comments and submit four (4) interim final copies.
    - c. Submit one electronic copy of owner's manuals upon completion of project.
    - d. Submit electronic copies of complete as-built documentation. All drawings shall be in standard AutoCad 2018 format, other documentation shall be in standard MS Office format and PDF format.
    - e. Update manuals with modifications made to system during guarantee period. Provide replacement pages or supplements in quantity stated above for "as built" manuals.
    - f. Manuals shall be electronically indexed to table of contents and indexes linked so that user may access linked pages and sections directly from a table of contents or index.
    - g. On the first page of each manual identify with project name, manual title, owner's name, engineer's name, contractor's name, address and service phone number, and person who prepared manual.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Web-based project documentation system shall serve as an off-site plan archive and provide access to any project-related documentation from a single source. The Web archive system shall comply with the following requirements:
  - a. The Web-based archive shall store all project related documentation on the contractor providing the work under this Section's secure online document server.
  - b. The database management and maintenance shall be the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section.
  - c. The archive shall be accessible using a high-speed Internet access by simply visiting a password protected Web address. User shall be able to access all information utilizing standard MS Office applications.
  - d. The system shall have advanced security and support custom access levels as defined by the administrator using the latest encryption technology.
  - e. The project archive shall be capable to update documentation to reflect new revisions.
  - f. The project documentation archive shall provide access to all project related documentation that includes, but not limited to contractual, specification and as-built documents, such as mechanical control drawings, and electrical wiring schematics, sequences of operation, point lists.
  - g. Provide electronic device lists and product specification/data sheets.
  - h. Provide a Web-based part ordering system.
  - i. Provide access to the control program code library.
  - j. The project archive shall be expandable to incorporate future projects as necessary.
  - k. The system shall provide access to the building service information. The user shall be able to request a service, view account activities, contracts, share files and generate custom reports.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Operating manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of day-to-day operation of the system. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Sequence of operation for automatic and manual operating modes for all building systems. The sequences shall cross reference the system point names including the equipment manufacturers BACnet point names.
  - 2. Description of manual override operation of all control points in system.
  - 3. BMS system manufacturers complete operating manuals.
  
- D. Provide maintenance manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of day-to-day maintenance and major system repairs. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Complete as-built installation drawings for each building system.
  - 2. Overall system electrical power supply schematic indicating source of electrical power for each system component. Indicate all battery backup provisions.
  - 3. Photographs and/or drawings showing installation details and locations of equipment.
  - 4. Routine preventive maintenance procedures, corrective diagnostics troubleshooting procedures, and calibration procedures.
  - 5. Parts lists with manufacturer's catalog numbers and ordering information.
  - 6. Lists of ordinary and special tools, operating materials supplies and test equipment recommended for operation and servicing.
  - 7. Manufacturer's operation, set-up, maintenance and catalog literature for each piece of equipment.
  - 8. Maintenance and repair instructions.
  - 9. Recommended spare parts.
  
- E. Provide Programming Manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of system programming. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Complete programming manuals, and reference guides.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Details of any custom software packages and compilers supplied with system.
3. Information and access required for independent programming of system.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 Materials

- A. All products used in this project installation shall be new and currently manufactured and shall have been applied in similar installations. Do not use this installation as a product test site unless explicitly approved in writing by Owner or Owner's representative. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.

#### 2.02 Communication

- A. The design of the BMS shall support networking of operator workstations and Building Controllers. The network architecture shall consist of two levels, an Ethernet based primary network for all operator workstations, servers, and primary DDC controllers along with secondary Floor Level Networks (FLN) for terminal equipment application specific controllers.
- B. Access to system data shall not be restricted by the hardware configuration of the building management system. The hardware configuration of the BMS network shall be totally transparent to the user when accessing data or developing control programs.
- C. Operator Workstation Communication:
  1. All color graphic operator workstations shall reside on the Ethernet network and the consoles shall be set up in a client/server configuration.
  2. The servers will act as the central database for system graphics and databases to provide consistency throughout all system workstations.
  3. The network shall allow concurrent use of multiple BMS software site licenses.
- D. Management Level Network Communication (MLN)
  1. All PCs shall simultaneously direct connect to the Ethernet Management Level Network without the use of an interposing device.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Operator Workstation shall be capable of simultaneous direct connection and communication with BACnet/IP, OPC and TCP/IP corporate level networks without the use of interposing devices.
  3. The Primary Network shall not impose a maximum constraint on the number of operator workstations.
  4. Any controller residing on the primary network shall connect to Ethernet network without the use of a PC or a gateway with a hard drive.
  5. Any PC on the Primary Network shall have transparent communication with controllers on the building level networks connected via Ethernet.
  6. Any break in Ethernet communication from the PC to the controllers on the Primary Network shall result in a notification at the PC.
  7. The standard client and server workstations on the Primary Network shall reside on industry standard Ethernet utilizing standard TCP/IP, IEEE 802.3.
  8. System software applications will run as a service to allow communication with Primary Network Controllers without the need for user log in. Closing the application or logging off shall not prevent the processing of alarms, network status, panel failures, and trend information.
  9. Any break in Ethernet communication between the standard client and server workstations on the Primary Network shall result in a notification at each workstation.
  10. Access to the system database shall be available from any standard client workstation on the Primary Network.
  11. Client access to client-server workstation configurations over the Internet network shall be available via Web browser interface.
  12. Thin Client access to client-server workstation configurations via Windows Terminal Services shall provide multiple, independent sessions of the workstations software. Terminal Services clients shall have full functionality, without the need to install the workstation software on the local hard drive.
- E. Primary Network - Panel to Panel Communication:
1. All Building Controllers shall directly reside on the primary Ethernet network such that communications may be executed directly between

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

Building Controllers, directly between server and Building Controllers on a peer-to-peer basis.

2. Systems that operate via polled response or other types of protocols that rely on a central processor, file server, or similar device to manage panel-to-panel or device-to-device communications shall not be acceptable.
3. All operator interfaces shall have the ability to access all point status and application report data or execute control functions for any and all other devices. Access to data shall be based upon logical identification of building equipment. No hardware or software limits shall be imposed on the number of devices with global access to the network data.
4. The primary network shall use TCP/IP over Ethernet. All devices shall:
  - a. Auto-sense 10/100 Mbps networks.
  - b. Receive an IP Address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Server or be configured with a Fixed IP Address.
  - c. Resolve Name to IP Addresses for devices using a Domain Name Service (DNS) Server on the Ethernet network.
  - d. Allow MMI access to an individual Primary Network Controller using industry standard Telnet software to view and edit entire Primary Network.
5. The primary network shall provide the following minimum performance:
  - a. Provide high-speed data transfer rates for alarm reporting, report generation from multiple controllers and upload/download efficiency between network devices. System performance shall insure that an alarm occurring at any Building Controller is displayed at any PC workstations, all Building controllers, and other alarm printers within 15 seconds.
  - b. Message and alarm buffering to prevent information from being lost.
  - c. Error detection, correction, and re-transmission to guarantee data integrity.
  - d. Synchronization of real-time clocks between Building Controllers, including automatic daylight savings time corrections.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- e. The primary network shall allow the Building Controllers to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other Building Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. Building Controllers shall send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. The network shall also allow any Building controller to access, edit, modify, add, delete, back up, restore all system point database and all programs.
  - f. The primary network shall allow the Building Controllers to assign password access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the PC workstation or portable terminal. (e.g. all base building and all tenant points shall be accessible to any base building operators, but only certain base building and tenant points shall be accessible to tenant building operators). Passwords and priorities for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
  - g. Devices containing custom programming shall reside on the Primary Network
- F. Secondary Network – Application Specific Controller Communication:
- 1. Communication over the secondary network shall be the manufacturer's standard protocol.
  - 2. Communication over the secondary network shall be BACnet MS/TP protocol.
  - 3. Communication over the secondary network shall be LonTalk protocol.
  - 4. Communication over the secondary network shall utilize a wireless MESH topology based on an IEEE 802.15.4 network. Point to point communication shall not be unacceptable.
  - 5. This level communication shall support a family of application specific controllers for terminal equipment.
  - 6. The Application Specific Controllers shall communicate bi-directionally with the primary network through Building Controllers for transmission of global data.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

7. A maximum of 30 terminal equipment controllers may be configured on individual secondary network trunks to insure adequate global data and alarm response times.

### G. Internet Based Communication:

#### 1. Web Based Operator Interface

- a. The BMS shall provide a web based graphical interface that allows users to access the BMS data via the Internet, extranet, or Intranet. The interface shall use HTML based ASP pages to send and receive data from the BMS to a web browser.
- b. A web server computer will be supplied. The web server shall use Microsoft's IIS server 4.0 with Windows NT4, or IIS 5.0 with Windows 2000, and support browser access via Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 (or higher), or Navigator Netscape 6.0 (or higher).
- c. All information exchanged over Internet shall be optionally encrypted and secure via SSL (provided by Owner).
- d. Access to the web interface may be password protected. Users' rights and privileges to points and graphics will be the same as those assigned at the BMS workstation. An option will exist to only allow users "read" access via the web browser, while maintaining "command" privileges via the BMS workstation.
- e. The web interface shall not require modification or creation of HTML or ASP pages using an HTML editor. All graphics available at the BMS graphical workstation shall be automatically generated to a web server.
- f. The web based interface shall provide the following functionality to users, based on their access and privilege rights:
  - 1) Logon Screen - allows the user to enter their name, password and domain name for logging into the web server.
  - 2) Alarm Display - a display of current BMS System alarms to which the user has access will be displayed. Users will be able to acknowledge and erase active alarms, and link to additional alarm information including alarm messages. Any alarm acknowledgments initiated through the web interface will be recorded to the BMS System activity log.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 3) Graphic Display - Display of system graphics, including animated motion, available in the BMS system workstation will be available for viewing over the web browser. Software that requires the creation of dedicated “web” graphics in order to display via the browser interface will not be acceptable. A graphic selector list will allow users to select any graphics to which they have access. Graphics displays will automatically refresh with the latest change of values. Users will have the ability to command and override points from the graphic display as determined by their user account rights.
  - 4) Point Details - users will have access to point detail information including operational status, operational priority, physical address, and alarm limits, for point objects to which they have access.
  - 5) Point Commanding - users will be able to override and command points they have access to via the web browser interface. Any commands or overrides initiated via the web browser interface will be written to the BMS system central workstation activity log.
- g. The web server licensing options will allow concurrent access by a minimum of five (5) browser connections.
  - h. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the owner as required to support the web access feature.
2. Terminal Services Operator Interface
    - a. Client access to client-server workstation configurations over low-bandwidth network technologies shall be available optionally via Windows Terminal Services or Web browser interface. Remote client access via Windows Terminal Services shall provide multiple, independent sessions of the workstations software – Terminal Services clients shall have workstation software access, without the need to install the workstation software on the local hard drive]

### H. Remote Notification Paging System:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Workstations shall be configured to send out messages to numeric pagers, alphanumeric pagers, phones (via text to speech technology), SMS (Simple Messaging Service, text messaging) Devices, and email accounts based on a point's alarm condition. Xxx.
2. There shall be no limit to the number of points that can be configured for remote notification of alarm conditions and no limit on the number of remote devices which can receive messages from the system.
3. On a per point basis, system shall be configurable to send messages to an individual or group and shall be configurable to send different messages to different remote devices based on alarm message priority level.
4. Remote devices may be scheduled as to when they receive messages from the system to account for operators' work schedules.
5. System shall be configurable to send messages to an escalation list so that if the first device does not respond, the message is sent on to the next device after a configurable time has elapsed.
6. Message detail shall be configurable on a per user basis.
7. During a "flood" of alarms, remote notification messages shall have the ability to optimize several alarms into an individual remote notification message.
8. Workstation shall have the ability to send manual messages allowing an operator to type in a message to be sent immediately.
9. Workstation shall have a feature to send a heartbeat message to periodically notify users that they have communication with the system.

### I. Wireless Communications

1. Wireless communications shall take place using modular wireless transceivers at each device that eliminate the need for a physical network communication cable.
  - a. The wireless transceiver shall utilize 2.4 GHz in the license free global Industrial Scientific & Medical (ISM) band for greater bandwidth.
  - b. The wireless transceiver shall be encased in a plenum-rated enclosure. If the application dictates, the wireless transceiver shall be able to be installed in a metal enclosure utilizing a remote mounted antenna.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. The wireless transceiver channel shall be factory set and capable of being field set to a different channel if interference with IEEE 802.11 devices or other 2.4 GHz products is encountered.
- d. The wireless transceiver shall be 24 VAC powered.
- e. The wireless transceiver shall give a visual indication that it is powered and communicating.
- f. The wireless transceiver shall have a field settable network identifier that allows multiple networks to occupy the same channel for maximum scalability.

### 2.03 Operator Interface:

#### A. Operator Interface Software:

##### 1. Basic Interface Description

- a. Operator interface software shall minimize operator training through the use of user-friendly and interactive graphical applications, 30-character English language point identification, on-line help, and industry standard Windows application software. Interface software shall simultaneously communicate with and share data between Ethernet-connected building level networks.
- b. Provide a graphical user interface that shall minimize the use of keyboard through the use of a mouse or similar pointing device, with a "point and click" approach to menu selection and a "drag and drop" approach to inter-application navigation.
- c. The navigation shall be user friendly by utilizing "forward & back" capability between screens and embedded hyperlinks to open graphics, documents, drawings, etc.
- d. Selection of applications within the operator interface software shall be via a graphical toolbar menu – the application toolbar menu shall have the option to be located in a docked position on any of the four sides of the visible desktop space on the workstation display monitor, and the option to automatically hide itself from the visible monitor workspace when not being actively manipulated by the user.
- e. The graphical toolbar menu shall have the option of adding additional user definable buttons that can launch local or network

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

programs, files, folders on Internet/Intranet addresses external to the BMS software.

- f. The software shall provide a multi-tasking type environment that allows the user to run several applications simultaneously. BMS software shall run on a Windows XP, 2000, or comparable 32 bit operating system. System database parameters shall be stored within an object-oriented database. Standard Windows applications shall run simultaneously with the BMS software. The mouse or Alt-Tab keys shall be used to quickly select and switch between multiple applications. The operator shall be able to work in Microsoft Word, Excel, and other Windows based software packages, while concurrently annunciating on-line BMS alarms and monitoring information
  
- g. The software shall provide, as a minimum, the following functionality:
  - 1) Real-time graphical viewing and control of the BMS environment
  - 2) Reporting
  - 3) Scheduling and override of building operations
  - 4) Collection and analysis of historical data
  - 5) Point database editing, storage and downloading of controller databases.
  - 6) Utility for combining points into logical Point Groups. The Point Groups shall then be manipulated in Graphics, trend graphs and reports in order to streamline the navigation and usability of the system.
  - 7) Alarm reporting, routing, messaging, and acknowledgment
  - 8) “Collapsible tree,” dynamic system architecture diagram application:
    - a) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all workstations and devices on a management level network
    - b) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all Building Controllers at the Primary Network.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c) Showing the definition details of all application specific controllers
- 9) Definition and construction of dynamic color graphic displays.
- 10) Online, context-sensitive help, including an index, glossary of terms, and the capability to search help via keyword or phrase.
- 11) On-screen access to User Documentation, via online help or PDF-format electronic file.
- 12) Automatic database backup at the operator interface for database changes initiated at Building Controllers.
- 13) Display dynamic trend data graphical plot.
  - a) Shall be able to run multiple plots simultaneously
  - b) Each plot shall be capable of supporting 10 pts/plot minimum
  - c) Shall be able to command points directly off dynamic trend plot application.
  - d) Shall be able to plot both real-time and historical trend data
- 14) Program editing
- 15) Report output shall have the option to be sent to an email address or group of email addresses.
- 16) Transfer trend data to 3rd party spreadsheet software
  - a) Scheduling reports
  - b) Operator Activity Log
  - c) Open communications via OPC Server
  - d) Open communications via BACnet Client & Server
- h. Enhanced Functionality:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 1) Provide functionality such that any of the following may be performed simultaneously on-line, and in any combination, via adjustable user-sized windows. Operator shall be able to drag and drop information between the following applications, reducing the number of steps to perform a desired function (e.g., Click on a point on the alarm screen and drag it to the dynamic trend graph application to initiate a dynamic trend on the desired point):
  - a) Dynamic color graphics application
  - b) Alarm management application
  - c) Scheduling application
  - d) Dynamic trend graph data plotter application
  - e) Dynamic system architecture diagram application
  - f) Control Program and Point database editing applications
  - g) Reporting applications
- 2) Report and alarm printing shall be accomplished via Windows Print Manager, allowing use of network printers.
  - i. Security: Operator-specific password access protection shall be provided to allow the administrator/manager to limit users' workstation control, display and data base manipulation capabilities as deemed appropriate for each user, based upon an assigned password. Operator privileges shall "follow" the operator to any workstation logged onto (up to 999 user accounts shall be supported). The administrator or manager shall be able to grant discrete levels of access and privileges, per user, for each point, graphic, report, schedule, and BMS workstation application. And each BMS workstation user account shall use a Windows Operating System user account as a foundation.
  - j. The operator interface software shall also include an application to track the actions of each individual operator, such as alarm acknowledgement, point commanding, schedule overriding, database editing, and logon/logoff. The application shall list each of the actions in a tabular format, and shall have sorting capabilities based on parameters such as ascending or descending

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

time of the action, or name of the object on which the action was performed. The application shall also allow querying based on object name, operator, action, or time range.

- k. Dynamic Color Graphics application shall include the following:
  - 1) Shall include graphic editing and modifying capabilities
  - 2) A library of standard control application graphics and symbols shall be included
  - 3) Shall be able to command points directly off graphics application
  - 4) Graphic display shall include the ability to depict real-time point values dynamically with animation, picture/frame control, symbol association, or dynamic informational text-blocks
  - 5) Navigation through various graphic screens shall be optionally achieved through a hierarchical “tree” structure
  - 6) Graphics viewing shall include zoom capabilities
  - 7) Graphics shall be capable of displaying the status of points that have been overridden by a field HAND switch, for points that have been designed to provide a field HAND override capability.
  - 8) Advanced linking within the Graphics application shall provide the ability to navigate to outside documents (e.g., .doc, .pdf, .xls, etc.), Internet web addresses, e-mail, external programs, and other workstation applications, directly from the Graphics application window with a mouse-click on a customizable link symbol.
- l. Reports shall be generated on demand or via pre-defined schedule, and directed to CRT displays, printers, file or email address. As a minimum, the system shall allow the user to easily obtain the following types of reports:
  - 1) A general listing of all or selected points in the network
  - 2) List of all points currently in alarm
  - 3) List of all points currently in override status

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 4) List of all disabled points
  - 5) List of all points currently locked out
  - 6) List of user accounts and access levels
  - 7) List all weekly schedules and events
  - 8) List of holiday programming
  - 9) List of control limits and deadbands
  - 10) Custom reports from 3rd party software
  - 11) System diagnostic reports including, list of Building panels on line and communicating, status of all Building terminal unit device points
  - 12) List of programs
  - 13) List of point definitions
  - 14) List of logical point groups
  - 15) List of alarm strategy definitions
  - 16) List of Building Control panels
  - 17) Point totalization report
  - 18) Point Trend data listings
  - 19) Initial Values report
  - 20) User activity report
- m. Scheduling and override
- 1) Provide a calendar type format for simplification of time and date scheduling and overrides of building operations. Schedule definitions reside in the PC workstation and in the Building Controller to ensure time equipment scheduling when PC is off-line, PC is not required to execute time scheduling. Provide override access through menu



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

selection, graphical mouse action or function key. Provide the following capabilities as a minimum:

- a) Weekly schedules
  - b) Zone schedules
  - c) Event schedules – an event consists of logical combinations of equipment and/or zones
  - d) Report schedules
  - e) Ability to schedule for a minimum of up to ten (10) years in advance.
- 2) Additionally, the scheduling application shall:
- a) Provide filtering capabilities of schedules, based on name, time, frequency, and schedule type (event, zone, report)
  - b) Provide sorting capabilities of schedules, based on name, time and type of schedule (zone, event, report)
  - c) Provide searching capabilities of schedules based on name – with wildcarding options
- n. Collection and Analysis of Historical Data
- 1) Provide trending capabilities that allow the user to easily monitor and preserve records of system activity over an extended period of time. Any system point may be trended automatically at time-based intervals (up to four time-based definitions per point) or change of value, both of which shall be user-definable. Trend data shall be collected stored on hard disk for future diagnostics and reporting. Automatic Trend collection may be scheduled at regular intervals through the same scheduling interface as used for scheduling of zones, events, and reports. Additionally, trend data may be archived to network drives or removable disk media for future retrieval.
  - 2) Trend data reports shall be provided to allow the user to view all trended point data. Reports may be customized to include individual points or predefined groups of selected

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

points. Provide additional functionality to allow predefined groups of up to 250 trended points to be easily transferred on-line to Microsoft Excel. Provide custom designed spreadsheet reports for use by the owner to track energy usage and cost, equipment run times, equipment efficiency, and/or building environmental conditions. Provide setup of custom reports including creation of data format templates for monthly or weekly reports.

- 3) Provide additional functionality that allows the user to view real-time trend data on trend graphical plot displays. A minimum of ten points may be plotted, of either real-time or historical data. The dynamic graphs shall continuously update point values. At any time the user may redefine sampling times or range scales for any point. In addition, the user may pause the display and take "snapshots" of plot screens to be stored on the workstation disk for future recall and analysis. Exact point values may be viewed and the graphs may be printed. A minimum of ten (10) dynamic graphs shall run simultaneously. Operator shall be able to command points directly on the trend plot by double clicking on the point. Operator shall be able to zoom in on a specific time range within a plot. The dynamic trend plotting application shall support the following types of graphs, with option to graph in 3D: line graph, area graph, curve graph, area-curve graph, step graph, and scatter graph. Each graph may be customized by the user, for graph type, graph text, titles, line styles and weight, colors, and configurable x- and y-axes.
- 4) Provide additional functionality that allows the user to display trend data for points from a graphic, alarm status screen, or a displayed point log report.

### o. Dynamic Color Graphic Displays

- 1) Capability to create color graphic floor plan displays and system schematics for each piece of mechanical equipment, including, but not limited to, air handling units, chilled water systems, hot water boiler systems, and room level terminal units.
- 2) The operator interface shall allow users to access the various system schematics and floor plans via a graphical penetration scheme, menu selection, point alarm association, or text-based commands. Graphics software

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

shall permit the importing of AutoCAD or scanned pictures for use in the system.

- 3) Dynamic temperature values, humidity values, flow values and status indication shall be shown in their actual respective locations within the system schematics or graphic floor plan displays, and shall automatically update to represent current conditions without operator intervention and without pre-defined screen refresh rates.
  - a) Provide the user the ability to display real-time point values by animated motion or custom picture control visual representation. Animation shall depict movement of mechanical equipment, or air or fluid flow. Picture Control shall depict various positions in relation to assigned point values or ranges. A library (set) of animation and picture control symbols shall be included within the operator interface software's graphics application. Animation shall reflect, ON or OFF conditions, and shall also be optionally configurable for up to five rates of animation speed.
  - b) Sizable analog bars shall be available for monitor and control of analog values; high and low alarm limit settings shall be displayed on the analog scale. The user shall be able to "click and drag" the pointer to change the setpoint.
  - c) Provide the user the ability to display blocks of point data by defined point groups; alarm conditions shall be displayed by flashing point blocks.
  - d) Equipment state or values can be changed by clicking on the associated point block or graphic symbol and selecting the new state (on/off) or setpoint.
  - e) State text for digital points can be user-defined up to eight characters.
  - f) Provide the user the ability to display trend data from the graphic screen through right click feature selection.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 4) Colors shall be used to indicate status and change as the status of the equipment changes. The state colors shall be user definable.
  - 5) Advanced linking within the Graphics application shall provide the ability to navigate to outside documents (e.g., .doc, .pdf, .xls, etc.), Internet web addresses, e-mail, external programs, and other workstation applications, directly from the Graphics application window with a mouse-click on a customizable link symbol.
  - 6) The Windows environment of the PC operator workstation shall allow the user to simultaneously view several applications at a time to analyze total building operation or to allow the display of a graphic associated with an alarm to be viewed without interrupting work in progress.
  - 7) Off the shelf graphic software shall be provided to allow the user to add, modify or delete system graphic background displays.
  - 8) A clipart library of HVAC application and automation symbols shall be provided including fans, valves, motors, chillers, AHU systems, standard ductwork diagrams and laboratory symbols. The user shall have the ability to add custom symbols to the clipart library. The clipart library shall include a minimum of 400 application symbols. In addition, a library consisting of a minimum of 700 graphic background templates shall be provided.
  - 9) The Graphics application shall include a set of standard Terminal Equipment controller application-specific background graphic templates. Templates shall provide the automatic display of a selected Terminal Equipment controller's control values and parameters, without the need to create separate and individual graphic files for each controller.
  - 10) The graphic application shall provide a tool be able to change full or partial point names on a graphic.
- p. System Configuration & Definition
- 1) A "Collapsible tree," dynamic system architecture diagram/display application of the site-specific BMS architecture showing status of controllers, PC workstations

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

and networks shall be provided. This application shall include the ability to add and configure workstations, Building Controllers, as well as 3rd-party integrated components. Symbols/Icons representing the system architecture components shall be user-configurable and customizable, and a library of customized icons representing 3rd-party integration solutions shall be included. This application shall also include the functionality for real-time display, configuration and diagnostics connections to Building Controllers.

- 2) Network wide control strategies shall not be restricted to a single Building Controller, but shall be able to include data from any and all other network panels to allow the development of Global control strategies.
- 3) Provide automatic backup and restore of all Building controller databases on the workstation hard disk. In addition, all database changes shall be performed while the workstation is on-line without disrupting other system operations. Changes shall be automatically recorded and downloaded to the appropriate Building Controller. Changes made at the user-interface of Building Controllers shall be automatically uploaded to the workstation, ensuring system continuity.
- 4) System configuration, programming, editing, graphics generation shall be performed on-line.
- 5) Point database configuration shall be available to the user within a dedicated point database editor application included in the operator interface software. The editor shall allow the user to create, view existing, modify, copy, and delete points from the database.
- 6) The point editor shall have the capability to assign “informational text” to points as necessary to provide critical information about the equipment.
- 7) The point editor shall also allow the user to configure the alarm management strategy for each point. The editor shall provide the option for editing the point database in an online or offline mode with the Building Controllers.
- 8) The operator interface software shall also provide the capability to perform bulk modification of point definition

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

attributes to a single or multiple user-selected points. This function shall allow the user to choose the properties to copy from a selected point to another point or set of points. The selectable attributes shall include, but are not limited to, Alarm management definitions and Trend definitions.

- 9) Control program configuration shall be available to the user within a dedicated control program editor application included in the operator interface software. The editor shall allow for creation, modification and deletion of control programs. The editor shall include a programming assistance feature that interactively guides the user through parameters required to generate a control program. The editor shall also include the ability to automatically compile the program to ensure its compatibility with the Building Controllers. The editor shall provide the option for editing the control programs in an online or offline mode, and also the ability to selectively enable or disable the live program execution within the Building Controllers. Additional compiler checks shall be built into the program editor which assists in the verification of valid GOTO statements. The additional compiler check shall also verify if each point in the program was defined in another panel.

### q. Alarm Management

- 1) Alarm Routing shall allow the user to send alarm notification to selected printers or workstation location(s) based on time of day, alarm severity, or point type.
- 2) Alarm Notification shall be presented to each workstation in a tabular format application, and shall include the following information for each alarm point: name, value, alarm time & date, alarm status, priority, acknowledgement information, and alarm count. Each alarm point or priority shall have the ability to sound a discrete audible notification.
- 3) Alarm Display shall have the ability to list & sort the alarms based on alarm status, point name, ascending or descending alarm time.
- 4) Directly from the Alarm Display, the user shall have the ability to acknowledge, silence the alarm sound, print, or erase each alarm. The interface shall also have the option to inhibit the erasing of active acknowledged alarms, until

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

they have returned to normal status. The user shall also have the ability to command, launch an associated graphic or trended graphical plot, or run a report on a selected alarm point directly on the Alarm Display.

- 5) Each alarm point shall have a direct link from the Alarm Display to further user-defined point informational data. The user shall have the ability to also associate real-time electronic annotations or notes to each alarm.
  - 6) Alarm messages shall be customizable for each point, or each alarm priority level, to display detailed instructions to the user regarding actions to take in the event of an alarm. Alarm messages shall also have the optional ability to individually enunciate on the workstation display via a separate pop-up window, automatically being generated as the associated alarm condition occurs. The system shall have the ability to modify the priority text based on operator preference.
  - 7) Alarm Display application shall allow workstation operators to send and receive real-time messages to each other, for purposes of coordinating Alarm and BMS system management.
- r. Remote notification of messages
- 1) Operator Interface software shall be configured to send out messages to numeric pagers, alphanumeric pagers, phones (via text to speech technology), SMS (Simple Messaging Service, text messaging) Devices, and email accounts based on a point's alarm condition.
  - 2) There shall be no limit to the number of points that can be configured for remote notification of alarm conditions and no limit on the number of remote devices which can receive messages from the system.
  - 3) On a per point basis, system shall be configurable to send messages to an individual or group and shall be configurable to send different messages to different remote devices based on alarm message priority level.
  - 4) Remote devices may be scheduled as to when they receive messages from the system to account for operators' work schedules.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 5) System shall be configurable to send messages to an escalation list so that if the first device does not respond, the message is sent on to the next device after a configurable time has elapsed.
- 6) Message detail shall be configurable on a per user basis.
- 7) During a “flood” of alarms, remote notification messages shall have the ability to optimize several alarms into an individual remote notification message.
- 8) Workstation shall have the ability to send manual messages allowing an operator to type in a message to be sent immediately.
- 9) Workstation shall have a feature to send a heartbeat message to periodically notify users that they have communication with the system.

### B. WEB BASED OPERATOR INTERFACE

1. Operator shall be able to access the field panel embedded Web server remotely using MS Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.
2. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the Owner as required to support the web access feature.

## 2.04 Building Controller Software

### A. General

1. Furnish the following applications software to form a complete operating system for building and energy management as described in this specification.
2. The software programs specified in this Section shall be provided as an integral part of Building Controllers and shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer or another controller for execution.
3. All points, panels and programs shall be identified by a 30 character name. All points shall also be identified by a 16 character point descriptor. The same names shall be displayed at both Building Controller and the Operator Interface.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. All digital points shall have a user defined two-state status indication with 8 characters minimum (e.g. Summer, Enabled, Disabled, Abnormal).
5. Building Controllers shall have the ability to perform energy management routines including but not limited to time of day scheduling, calendar-based scheduling, holiday scheduling, temporary schedule overrides, start stop time optimization, automatic daylight savings time switch over, night setback control, enthalpy switch over, peak demand limiting, temperature-compensated duty cycling, heating / cooling interlock, supply temperature reset, priority load shedding, and power failure restart.
6. The Building Controllers shall have the ability to perform the following pre tested control algorithms:
  - a. Two position control
  - b. Proportional control
  - c. Proportional plus integral control
  - d. Proportional, integral, plus derivative control
  - e. Automatic tuning of control loops
  - f. Model-Free Adaptive Control
7. Each controller shall be provided with an interactive HELP function to assist operators using POTs and remote connected operators.
8. Building Controllers shall not be susceptible to Microsoft Windows operating systems based viruses.

### B. Web Based Operator Interface:

1. The BAS shall provide a Web based graphical interface that allows users to access the BAS data via the Internet, extranet, or Intranet (TCP/IP). The Web based graphical interface shall use HTML-based pages to send and receive data directly from a network of BAS Field Panels to a web browser. Dedicated PC-based Web servers or separate “Web Appliance” devices may be allowed for this purpose.
2. The Web server shall allow monitor and control to any field panels networked together on the same automation level TCP/IP network.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. The web server shall provide a common alarm display that shows alarms in all field panels on the network.
  - b. The web server shall be able to provide common graphics that simultaneously display the current value and status for points residing in multiple field panels.
  - c. The web server shall be able to display daily mode schedules for points from multiple field panels simultaneously.
3. The Web server shall support browser access via Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 (or later), with “cookies” enabled and compatible Microsoft Java Applet (JVM) installed.
  4. Access to the Web interface shall be username and password protected. A user’s rights and privileges to database objects within the BAS shall be configurable on a per-user basis. An option shall exist to only allow users “read” access to BAS objects via the web browser. Operator sessions shall be configurable for “auto-logoff” after a designated period of user inactivity.
  5. The embedded Web server shall support an unlimited number of user accounts. Up to two concurrent user sessions shall be available for simultaneous operator access to the Web server’s pages.
  6. The embedded Web server shall be compatible with and allow coexistence within standard IT security policies and tools (e.g., Firewall protection).
  7. The embedded Web server shall provide the following functionality to users via Web browser, based on their access and privilege rights:
    - a. Logon Screen – allows the user to enter his user name and password for logging into the Web server.
    - b. Alarm Display – a display of current BAS alarms to which the user has access will be displayed. Users will be able to acknowledge active alarms, erase resolved alarms, and directly link to the Point Commanding feature.
      - 1) The alarm display shall provide a filter that displays all alarms whether acknowledged or not.
      - 2) The alarm display shall provide a filter that displays only alarms that have not yet been acknowledged.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 3) The alarm display shall provide a persistent indication whenever there is one or more unacknowledged alarm in any connected field panel.
- c. Graphic Display – Display of system graphics shall be available for viewing over the Web browser. A graphic selector list will allow users to select any graphics to which they have access. Graphic displays will automatically refresh with the latest change of values. Users will have the ability to command and override points directly from the graphic display as determined by their user accounts rights. The Graphic Display shall accommodate up to 10 customized graphics, plus any Application-specific graphics related to the Application Specific Controllers encompassed by the system.
    - 1) The web server shall allow users to create at least one graphic online through the Web interface without requiring the use of external software programming tool.
  - d. Point details – users will have access to point detail information including operational status, operational priority, physical address, and alarm limits, for point objects to which they have access rights.
  - e. Point Commanding – users will be able to override and command points they have access to via the web browser interface.
  - f. Scheduling – shall allow operators, depending on their current user privileges, to override schedules selected by date, and to modify the properties of a selected schedule.
    - 1) The scheduler display shall be able to represent facility mode schedules in a graphical format.
  - g. Point Status Report – allows users to run and print a pre-configured point log report through a web interface client that shows the point name, descriptor, command priority, alarm status, and current value. The report shall allow selection of individual points or wildcard selection of points.
  - h. Trend Data Report – allows users to run and print a pre-configured trend data report for historical data reporting, including a representation of the alarm status of the each point for each Trend sample. The report shall allow selection of individual points or wildcard selection of points.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- i. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the Owner as required to support the web access feature.

### C. System Security

1. User access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
2. Passwords shall restrict the user to the objects, applications, and system functions as assigned by the system manager.
3. Building Controllers shall be able to assign a minimum of 50 passwords access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any Operator Interface or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the Operator Interface or portable terminal. Passwords and priorities for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
4. User Log On / Log Off attempts shall be recorded.
5. The system shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off following the last keystroke. The delay time shall be user-definable.
6. Use of workstation resident security as the only means of access control is not an acceptable alternative to resident system security in the field panel.

### D. User Defined Control Applications

1. Controllers shall be able to execute custom, job-specific processes defined by the user, to automatically perform calculations and special control routines.
2. It shall be possible to use any system measured point data or status, any system calculated data, a result from any process, or any user-defined constant in any controller in the system.
3. Any process shall be able to issue commands to points in any and all other controllers in the system.
4. Processes shall be able to generate operator messages and advisories to other operator I/O devices. A process shall be able to directly send a

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

message to a specified device or cause the execution of a dial-up connection to a remote device such as a printer or pager.

5. Each controller shall support plain language text comment lines in the operating program to allow for quick troubleshooting, documentation, and historical summaries of program development.
6. Controller shall provide a HELP function key, providing enhanced context sensitive on-line help with task oriented information from the user manual.

### E. Alarm Management

1. Alarm management shall be provided to monitor and direct alarm information to operator devices. Each Building Controller shall perform distributed, independent alarm analysis and filtering to minimize operator interruptions due to non-critical alarms, minimize network traffic and prevent alarms from being lost. At no time shall the Building Controllers ability to report alarms be affected by either operator or activity at a PC workstation, local I/O device or communications with other panels on the network.
2. Conditional alarming shall allow generation of alarms based upon user defined multiple criteria.
3. An Alarm “shelving” feature shall be provided to disable alarms during testing. (Pull the Plug, etc.).
4. Binary Alarms. Each binary object shall be set to alarm based on the operator-specified state. Provide the capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
5. Analog Alarms. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
6. All alarm or point change reports shall include the point's user defined language description and the time and date of occurrence.
7. The user shall be able to define the specific system reaction for each point. Alarms shall be prioritized to minimize nuisance reporting and to speed operator response to critical alarms. A minimum of six priority levels shall be provided for each point. Point priority levels shall be combined with user definable destination categories (PC, printer, Building Controller, etc.) to provide full flexibility in defining the handling of system alarms. Each Building Controller shall automatically inhibit the reporting of selected alarms during system shutdown and start-up. Users shall have the ability to manually inhibit alarm reporting for each point.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

8. Alarm reports and messages shall be routed to user-defined list of operator workstations, or other devices based on time and other conditions. An alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in the event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
9. In addition to the point's descriptor and the time and date, the user shall be able to print, display or store a 200 character alarm message to more fully describe the alarm condition or direct operator response.
  - a. Each Building Controller shall be capable of storing a library of at least 50 alarm messages. Each message may be assignable to any number of points in the Controller.
10. Operator-selected alarms shall be capable of initiating a call to a remote operator device.

### F. Scheduling

1. Provide a comprehensive menu driven program to automatically start and stop designated object or group of objects in the system according to a stored time.
2. Schedules shall reside in the building controller and shall not rely on external processing or network.
3. It shall be possible to define a group of objects as a custom event (i.e. meeting, athletic activity, etc.). Events can then be scheduled to operate all necessary equipment automatically.
4. For points assigned to one common load group, it shall be possible to assign variable time delays between each successive start and stop within that group.
5. The operator shall be able to define the following information:
  - a. Time, day
  - b. Commands such as on, off, auto, etc.
  - c. Time delays between successive commands.
  - d. There shall be provisions for manual overriding of each schedule by an authorized operator.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. It shall be possible to schedule calendar-based events up to one year in advance based on the following:
  - a. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each of these schedules should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer. When a group of objects are scheduled together as an Event, provide the capability to adjust the start and stop times for each member.
  - b. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by the standard schedule for that day of the week.
  - c. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules. These schedules may be placed on the scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period.
  
- G. Peak Demand Limiting (PDL):
  1. The Peak Demand Limiting (PDL) program shall limit the consumption of electricity to prevent electrical peak demand charges.
  2. PDL shall continuously track the amount of electricity being consumed, by monitoring one or more electrical kilowatt-hour/demand meters. These meters may measure the electrical consumption (kWh), electrical demand (kW), or both.
  3. PDL shall sample the meter data to continuously forecast the demand likely to be used during successive time intervals.
  4. If the PDL forecasted demand indicates that electricity usage is likely to exceed a user preset maximum allowable level, then PDL shall automatically shed electrical loads.
  5. Ability to initialize and restart the meter area directly from the workstation.
  
- H. Temperature-compensated duty cycling.
  1. The DCCP (Duty Cycle Control Program) shall periodically stop and start loads according to various patterns.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. The loads shall be cycled such that there is a net reduction in both the electrical demands and the energy consumed.
- I. Automatic Daylight Savings Time Switchover: The system shall provide automatic time adjustment for switching to/from Daylight Savings Time.
  - J. Night setback control. The system shall provide the ability to automatically adjust setpoints for night control.
  - K. Economizer switchover. The Building Controller Software (BCS) shall control the position of the air handler relief, return, and outside air dampers. If the outside air dry bulb temperature falls below changeover set point the BCS will modulate the dampers to provide 100 percent outside air. The user will be able to quickly changeover to an economizer system based on dry bulb temperature and will be able to override the economizer cycle and return to minimum outside air operation at any time.
  - L. Loop Control. A Model-Free Adaptive Control algorithm or alternatively a PID (proportional-integral-derivative) closed-loop control algorithm with direct or reverse action and anti-windup shall be supplied. The algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that is used to position an output or stage a series of outputs. The controlled variable, set point, and weighting parameters shall be user-selectable.
  - M. Sequencing. Provide application software based upon the sequences of operation specified to properly sequence equipment.
  - N. Staggered Start
    1. This application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. The order in which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be user definable.
    2. Upon the resumption of power, each Building Controller shall analyze the status of all controlled equipment, compare it with normal occupancy scheduling and turn equipment on or off as necessary to resume normal operations.
  - O. Totalization
    1. Run-Time Totalization. Building Controllers shall automatically accumulate and store run-time hours for all digital input and output points. A high runtime alarm shall be assigned, if required, by the operator.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Consumption totalization. Building Controllers shall automatically sample, calculate and store consumption totals on a daily, weekly or monthly basis for all analog and digital pulse input type points.
3. Event totalization. Building Controllers shall have the ability to count events such as the number of times a pump or fan system is cycled on and off. Event totalization shall be performed on a daily, weekly or monthly basis for all points. The event totalization feature shall be able to store the records associated with events before reset.

### P. Data Collection

1. A variety of historical data collection utilities shall be provided to manually or automatically sample, store, and display system data for all points.
2. Building Controllers shall store point history data for selected analog and digital inputs and outputs:
  - a. Any point, physical or calculated may be designated for trending. Any point, regardless of physical location in the network, may be collected and stored in each Building Controllers point group.
  - b. Two methods of collection shall be allowed: either by up to four pre-defined time intervals and/or upon a pre-defined change of value. Sample intervals of 1 minute to 7 days shall be provided.
  - c. Each Building Controller shall have a dedicated RAM-based buffer for trend data and shall be capable of storing a minimum of 10,000 data samples.
3. Trend data shall be stored at the Building Controllers and uploaded to the workstation when retrieval is desired. Uploads shall occur based upon either user-defined interval, manual command or when the trend buffers are full. All trend data shall be available for use in 3rd party personal computer applications.
4. Loop Tuning. Building Controllers shall also provide high resolution sampling capability for verification of DDC control loop performance. Documented evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided on a <monthly, seasonal, quarterly, annual> period.
  - a. For Model-Free Adaptive Control loops, evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided via graphical plots or trended data logs. Graphical plots shall minimally include depictions of setpoint, process variable (output), and control variable (e.g.,

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

temperature). Other parameters that may influence loop control shall also be included in the plot (e.g., fan on/off, mixed-air temp).

- b. For PID control loops, operator-initiated automatic and manual loop tuning algorithms shall be provided for all operator-selected PID control loops. Evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided via graphical plots or trended data logs for all loops.
  - 1) In automatic mode, the controller shall perform a step response test with a minimum one-second resolution, evaluate the trend data, calculate the new PID gains and input these values into the selected LOOP statement.
  - 2) Loop tuning shall be capable of being initiated either locally at the Building Controller, from a network workstation or remotely using dial-in modems. For all loop tuning functions, access shall be limited to authorized personnel through password protection.

### 2.05 Building Controllers

- A. Building Controllers shall be 32 bit, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time 48 MHz digital control processors consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, power supplies and input/output point modules. Controller size shall be sufficient to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point list.
- B. Each Building Controller shall support a minimum of 3 directly connected Secondary Networks.
- C. Each Building Controller shall have sufficient memory, a minimum of 72 megabyte, to support its own operating system and databases, including control processes, energy management applications, alarm management applications, historical/trend data for points specified, maintenance support applications, custom processes, operator I/O, and dial-up communications.
- D. Building Controller shall have an integral real-time clock.
- E. Each Building Controller shall support firmware upgrades without the need to change hardware.
- F. Each Building Controller shall support:
  1. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital inputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Building Controller cabinet.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital outputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Building Controller cabinet.
- G. Spare Point Capacity.
1. Each Building Controller shall have a minimum of 10 percent spare point capacity.
  2. The type of spares shall be in the same proportion as the implemented I/O functions of the panel, but in no case shall there be less than one spare of each implemented I/O type.
  3. Provide all processors, power supplies, and communication controllers so that the implementation of adding a point to the spare point location only requires the addition of the appropriate:
    - a. Expansion modules
    - b. Sensor/actuator
    - c. Field wiring/tubing.
- H. Serial Communication. Building Controllers shall provide at least two EIA-232C serial data communication ports for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, and portable laptop operator's terminals. Building Controllers shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected printers or terminals.
- I. Manual Override. The operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the Building Controller via local, point discrete, integral hand/off/auto operator override switches for all digital control type points and gradual switches for all analog control type points. These override switches shall be operable whether the panel processor is operational or not. Each Building Controller shall monitor and alarm the hand, off and auto positions of integral HOA switches.
- J. I/O Status and Indication. Building Controllers shall provide local LED status indication for each digital input and output for constant, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device. Graduated intensity LEDs or analog indication of value shall also be provided for each analog output. All wiring connections shall be made to field-removable terminals.
- K. Self-Diagnostics. Each Building Controller shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and diagnosis of all panel components. The Building Controller shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

detected component failures, low battery conditions or repeated failure to establish communication for any system.

- L. Power loss. In the event of the loss of power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all Building Controllers to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 100 hours.
- M. Environment.
  - 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
  - 2. Controllers used outdoors and/or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted within waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 49°C (32°F to 120°F).
  - 3. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-proof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 49°C (32°F to 120°F).
- N. Immunity to power and noise.
  - 1. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage.
    - a. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).
  - 2. Isolation shall be provided at all primary network terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
    - a. RF-Conducted Immunity (RFI) per EN 50141 (IEC 1000-4-6) at 3 V
    - b. Electro Static Discharge (ESD) Immunity per EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 1000-4-2) at 8 kV air discharge, 4 kV contact
    - c. Electrical Fast Transient (EFT) per EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 1000-4-4) at 500 V signal, 1 kV power
    - d. Output Circuit Transients per UL 864 (2,400V, 10A, 1.2 Joule max)

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Isolation shall be provided at all Building Controller's AC input terminals to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
  - a. IEEE Standard 587 1980
  - b. UL 864 Supply Line Transients
  - c. Voltage Sags, Surge, and Dropout per EN 61000-4-11 (EN 1000-4-11)
- O. Keypad. A local keypad and display shall be provided for each controller. The keypad shall be provided for interrogating and editing data. An optional system security password shall be available to prevent unauthorized use of the keypad and display.
- P. Minimum Approved Building Controllers.
  1. Furnish Building Controllers as listed below. Providing an approved controller does not release the contractor providing the work under this Section from meeting all performance, software and hardware specifications for Building Controllers and system operations.
  2. Siemens Building Technologies Inc. - Modular Building/Equipment Controllers (MBC/MEC).

### 2.06 Application Specific Controllers (ASC)

- A. General
  1. Provide for control of each piece of equipment , including, but not limited to the following:
    - a. Variable Air Volume (VAV ) boxes
    - b. Reheat Coils (RH)
    - c. Fan Powered Boxes (FPB)
    - d. Unit Conditioners
    - e. Heat Pumps
    - f. Digital Energy Monitors

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Each Building Controller shall be able to communicate with application specific controllers (ASCs) over the Secondary Network to control terminal equipment only.
3. The use of Secondary Network controllers with custom program applications to control AHU's, water systems, etc. is not acceptable.
4. Each ASC shall operate as a stand-alone controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independently of other controllers in the network. Each ASC shall be a microprocessor-based, multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor.
5. Each ASC shall include all point inputs and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences. The ASC shall accept input and provide output signals that comply with industry standards. Controllers utilizing proprietary control signals shall not be acceptable. Outputs utilized either for two-state, modulating floating, or proportional control, allowing for additional system flexibility.
6. Space Temperature Sensors. Each controller performing space temperature control shall be provided with a matching room temperature sensor.
  - a. The space temperature sensor shall be available in wired and wireless versions.
  - b. Wired Sensor specifications. The sensor may be either RTD or thermistor type providing the following.
    - 1) Accuracy: + .5 F
    - 2) Operating Range: 35 to 115 F
    - 3) Set Point Adjustment Range: 55 to 95 F
    - 4) Calibration Adjustments: None required
    - 5) Installation: Up to 100 ft. from controller
    - 6) Auxiliary Communications Port: as required
    - 7) Local LCD Temperature Display: as required
    - 8) Set Point Adjustment Dial as required
    - 9) Occupancy Override Switch as required

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. Wireless Space Temperature Sensors specifications. The sensor shall be 100K Ohm Thermistor or equivalent type providing the following. [ID: 133]
  - 1) Accuracy: + .5 F
  - 2) Operating Range: 35 to 95 F
  - 3) Monitoring Range: 55 to 95 F
  - 4) Calibration Adjustments: None required
  - 5) Installation: Up to 100 ft. from controller
  - 6) Battery life: Minimum 3 years
  - 7) Auxiliary Communications Port: as required
- d. Set Point Modes:
  - 1) Independent Heating, Cooling
  - 2) Night Setback-Heating
  - 3) Night Setback-Cooling
- e. Auxiliary Communication Port. Each room temperature sensor shall include a terminal jack integral to the sensor assembly. The terminal jack shall be used to connect a portable operator's terminal to control and monitor all hardware and software points associated with the controller. RS-232 communications port shall allow the operator to query and modify operating parameters of the local room terminal unit from the portable operator's terminal.
- f. LCD Display. Interactive, two- line liquid crystal display shall allow the operator to query and modify operating parameters of the local room terminal unit from the room sensor. The display shall indicate the space temperature and associated ASC point when not being used to query or modify operating parameters.
- g. Set Point Adjustment Dial. The set point adjustment dial shall allow for modification of the temperature by the building operators. Set point adjustment may be locked out, overridden, or limited as to time or temperature through software by an authorized operator at any central workstation, Building

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

Controller, room sensor two-line display, or via the portable operator's terminal.

- h. **Override Switch.** An override switch shall initiate override of the night setback mode to normal (day) operation when activated by the occupant and enabled by building operators. The override shall be limited to two (2) hours (adjustable.) The override function may be locked out, overridden, or limited through software by an authorized operator at the operator interface, Building Controller, room sensor two-line display or via the portable operator's terminal.
7. **Communication.** Each controller shall perform its primary control function independent of other Secondary Network communication, or if Secondary Network communication is interrupted. Reversion to a fail-safe mode of operation during Secondary Network interruption is not acceptable.
8. **Control Algorithms.** The controller shall receive its real-time data from the Building Controller time clock to insure Secondary Network continuity. Each controller shall include algorithms incorporating proportional, integral and derivative (PID) gains for all applications. All PID gains and biases shall be field-adjustable by the user via room sensor LCD or the portable operator's terminal as specified herein. Controllers that incorporate proportional and integral (PI) control algorithms only shall not be acceptable.
9. **Control Applications.** Operating programs shall be field-selectable for specific applications. In addition, specific applications may be modified to meet the user's exact control strategy requirements, allowing for additional system flexibility. Controllers that require factory changes of all applications are not acceptable.
10. **Calibration.** Each controller shall include provisions for manual and automatic calibration of the differential pressure transducer in order to maintain stable control and insuring against drift over time.
  - a. Manual calibration may be accomplished by either commanding the actuator to 0% via the POT or by depressing the room sensor override switch. Calibration of the transducer at the controller location shall not be necessary
  - b. Calibration shall be accomplished by stroking the terminal unit damper actuator to a 0% position so that a 0 CFM air volume reading is sensed. The controller shall automatically accomplish



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

this whenever the system mode switches from occupied to unoccupied or vice versa.

- c. Calibration shall be accomplished by zeroing out the pressure sensor and holding damper at last known position until calibration is complete. The controller shall automatically accomplish this whenever the system mode switches from occupied to unoccupied or vice versa.

### 11. Memory:

- a. Provide each ASC with sufficient memory to accommodate point databases, operating programs, local alarming and local trending. All databases and programs shall be stored in non-volatile EEPROM, EPROM and PROM, or minimum of 72-hour battery backup shall be provided. The controllers shall be able to return to full normal operation without user intervention after a power failure of unlimited duration.
- b. Upon replacement, new ASCs shall recover control function and site specific defaults automatically and resume normal operation.

### 12. Power Supply. The ASCs shall be powered from a 24 VAC source and shall function normally under an operating range of 18 to 28 VAC, allowing for power source fluctuations and voltage drops. Power supply for the ASC shall be rated at a minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption and shall be of the fused or current limiting type. Provide 24 VAC power to the terminal units by utilizing:

- a. The existing line voltage power trunk and installing separate isolation transformers for each controller
- b. Dedicated line voltage power source and isolation transformers at a central location and installing 24VAC power trunk to supply multiple ASCs in the area.

### 13. Environment. The controllers shall function normally under ambient conditions of 32 to 122 F (0 to 50 C) and 10% to 95%RH (non-condensing). Provide each controller with a suitable cover or enclosure to protect the circuit board assembly.

### 14. Immunity to noise. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5-120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).

### 15. Manufacturer Installed Controls.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. BMS manufacturer shall furnish ASC and actuator for factory mounting to equipment manufacturer.
- b. Cost of factory mounting shall be borne by equipment manufacturer.
- c. For VAV terminals, equipment manufacturer shall provide and install flow-cross sensor, 24 Vac transformer, controls enclosure, fan relay, SCR and factory install, wire and tube ASC controller and actuator.
- d. Fan powered VAV terminals shall be equipped with a fan speed controller and relay to change summer and winter speed set point.

### B. Digital Energy Monitors:

1. Provide three phase digital Watt-meters with pre-wired current transmitters. (CT) All Watt-meter electronics shall be housed within the CTs. CTs shall include sizes capable of mounting directly on a power bus. Diagnostics visible to the installing electrician (without an operator tool) shall indicate: proper operation, defective wiring or low power-factor, device malfunction, and over-load condition. The meters shall include the following:
  2. The device shall be UL Listed, and shall comply with ANSI C12.1 accuracy specification. The minimum CT/meter combined accuracy shall be no greater than 1% of reading over the range of 5% to 100% of rated load. The meter shall not require calibration
  3. The Watt-meter shall directly connect to power from 208 through 480 with no potential transformer. In-line fuses for each voltage tap phase shall be included.
    - a. The Watt-meter CTs shall be split-core and at minimum be sized to accommodate loads ranging from 100 to 2400 Amps. The CTs shall be volt-signal type, and shall not require shorting blocks.
    - b. The Watt-meter shall reside directly on the Secondary Network along with other Secondary Network devices. Data transferred shall include:
      - 1) kW & kWh
      - 2) Consumption
      - 3) Demand
      - 4) Power Factor

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 5) Current
- 6) Voltage
- 7) Apparent Power
- 8) Reactive Power

### 2.07 Input/Output Interface:

- A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into the system through building or application specific controllers.
- B. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground will cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no damage to the controller.
- C. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of On/Off signals from remote devices. The binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against the effects of contact bounce and noise. Binary inputs shall sense “dry contact” closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
- D. Pulse accumulation input objects. This type of object shall conform to all the requirements of binary input objects and also accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation.
- E. Analog inputs shall allow the monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 VDC), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals (thermistor, RTD). Analog inputs shall be compatible with—and field configurable to—commonly available sensing devices.
- F. Binary outputs shall provide for On/Off operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Binary outputs on building and custom application controllers shall have three-position (On/Off/Auto) override switches and status lights. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- G. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 mA or 0-20 PSI signal as required to provide proper control of the output device. Analog outputs on building or custom application controllers shall have status lights and a two-position (AUTO/MANUAL) switch and manually adjustable potentiometer for manual override. Analog outputs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4% of range per year.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- H. Tri-State Outputs. Provide tri-state outputs (two coordinated binary outputs) for control of three-point floating type electronic actuators without feedback. Use of three-point floating devices shall be limited to zone control and terminal unit control applications (VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, zone dampers, radiation, etc.). Control algorithms shall run the zone actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.
- I. System Object Capacity. The system size shall be expandable to at least twice the number of input/ output objects required for this project. Additional controllers (along with associated devices and wiring) shall be all that is necessary to achieve this capacity requirement. The operator interfaces installed for this project shall not require any hardware additions or software revisions in order to expand the system.

### 2.08 Power Supplies and Line Filtering

- A. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
- B. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand a 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
  - 1. Unit shall operate between 0°C and 50°C (32°F and 120°F). EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
  - 2. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA approved.
- C. Power line filtering.
  - 1. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers either internally or as an external component. Surge protection shall have the following at a minimum:
    - a. Dielectric strength of 1000 volts minimum
    - b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
    - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or better at 40 Hz to 100 Hz.

## 2.09 Auxiliary Control Devices

### A. General:

1. Specified in this section are the following hard wired input/output devices connected to the Building Controller or ASC.
  - a. Automatic Dampers
  - b. Fire/Smoke Dampers
  - c. Electric Damper Actuators
  - d. Motorized Isolation Valves
  - e. Airflow Measuring Stations
  - f. Binary Temperature Devices
  - g. Temperature Sensors
  - h. Dew Point/Humidity Sensors
  - i. Pressure Sensors
  - j. Water Differential Pressure Sensors
  - k. Differential Pressure Switches
  - l. Analog Water Level Sensors
  - m. Water Leak Detection Systems
  - n. Audio/Visual Alarm Units
  - o. Water BTU Meters
  - p. Vortex Shedding Flow Meters
  - q. Indoor Air Quality (CO<sub>2</sub>/VOC) Space Sensors
  - r. Relays
  - s. Override Timers
  - t. Current Transformers
  - u. Voltage Transmitters
  - v. Voltage Transformers
  - w. Power Monitors
  - x. Current Switches
  - y. Pressure Electric Switches
  - z. Local Control panels
  - aa. Local User Display
2. Specified in this section are the following devices connected to the BMS using secondary network communication.
  - a. Water BTU Meters
  - b. Variable Frequency Drives (VFD)
  - c. Indoor Air Quality (CO<sub>2</sub>/VOC) Space Sensors
  - d. Power Monitors

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### B. Automatic Dampers

1. Dampers shall have 13 gauge galvanized frames of not less than 3" in width and blades of 14 gauge, equivalent thickness, galvanized steel roll formed airfoil type for low pressure drop and low noise generation and shall be adequately braced to form a rigid assembly where required in galvanized duct work. Dampers shall have blades not more 8" wide. Linkage and hardware shall be zinc plated steel and shall be concealed out of airstream within the damper frame. Damper blades and rods shall be installed in horizontal position.
2. In copper, aluminum and stainless steel duct work, damper material shall match the duct work material.
3. All dampers shall be of the proportioning or opposed blade type, and shall be motor operated. Dampers shall have continuous elastomer or stainless steel stops to avoid leakage. Bearings shall be corrosion resistant oil tight stainless steel sleeve type. All dampers shall be provided with continuous 3/16" x 1/2" closed cell neoprene gasket around perimeter of the frame and at interlocking blade edges to form an air tight seal. Blade seals shall be suitable for -76° F to 350°F mechanically locked into blade edge. Adhesive of clip on type are not acceptable. Axles shall be square or hexagonal positively locked into damper blade. Linkage shall be concealed out of airstream within the damper blade.
4. All dampers shall be constructed to provide a maximum leakage of 3-1/2%, with an approach velocity of 1500 fpm when closed against a pressure of 4 inches of water. Submit leakage and flow characteristic data for all dampers.
5. All outside air dampers, with the exception of the emergency generator dampers, shall automatically close in the event of a loss of power. Dampers on emergency generators shall automatically open on a loss of power.
6. All smoke dampers shall be constructed in accordance with UL standard 555S.
7. Dampers shall be Ruskin Model CD60, Imperial Model 800 or approved equal.

### C. Fire/Smoke Dampers

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Dampers shown on drawings designated as “F/SM” shall comply with the following. They shall have a U.L. label. Dampers shall be pneumatically operated combination fire and smoke Ruskin, Imperial or approved equal, provided with factory installed U.L. rated full sleeves. Provide air foil or “V” blade damper blades supported with shafts and stainless steel bearings to allow daily operation. Provide intermediate supports and bearings for damper blades more than 36” long. They shall conform to UL Standard 555 and 555S as leakage rated dampers in smoke control systems when closed shall be the equivalent of a 1-1/2 hour fire damper. Leakage shall conform to Class 2 with maximum leakage of 10 CFM/Sq. Ft. at 1” W.G. Damper actuators shall be provided with position indicator switches to enable remote status of open or closed positions (only those dampers designated in the electrical trade plans and specifications will be provided with position switches and will be wired for remote status and remote open/closed operation, but all dampers will be provided with position indicators for possible future use). Note that dampers which are controlled from a central fire command station shall be provided with a 212°F heat sensor with normally closed contacts (manual reset) to close and lock damper if open. Additionally, dampers shall be factory equipped with a second normally closed heat sensor correlating to the operator/actuator degradation temperature classification (250°F to 350°F, depending on actuator utilized). The second sensor is wired through a manual override switch on the central fire command station. Dampers which are not controlled from a central fire command station shall have a fusible link which melts on heat causing damper to close and lock in a closed position. The following will be accepted in lieu of the two firestats described. A resettable bimetallic link which opens on heat permitting damper to close and lock if open. This link may be re-engaged from fire command station at temperature of 150°F or less.
2. Dampers shown on drawings designated “SM” shall comply in all respects to F/S damper description including position indicating switches except they shall not be provided with a heat sensor or fusible link.

### D. Electric Damper Actuators

1. General
  - a. The actuator shall have mechanical or electronic stall protection to prevent damage to the actuator throughout the rotation of the actuator.
  - b. Where shown, for power-failure/safety applications, an internal mechanical, spring-return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Alternatively, an uninterruptible power supply

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

(UPS) may be provided. On terminal unit valves actuators capacitor driven fail action is permitted.

- c. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0 to 10 VDC or 0 to 20 mA control signal and provide a 2 to 10 VDC or 4 to 20 mA operating range.
- d. All 24 VAC/VDC actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
- e. All actuators shall have an external manual gear release to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 Nm (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank for this purpose.
- f. Electric actuators for emergency generator damper control shall be rated for 350 degree F. maximum operating temperature and capable to drive fully open and close within 15 seconds.

### E. Motorized isolation valves

#### 1. Butterfly Valves.

- a. Furnish automatic butterfly valves for isolation requirements as shown on the drawings or required herein. All butterfly valves shall have body ratings in accordance with the piping specifications. Valves shall be high performance, fully lugged with carbon steel body ANSI 150/300. Valves shall be rated for bubble tight dead end closure, with 316 stainless steel disc, stainless steel shaft and reinforced Teflon seat and seals.
- b. Motorized valves located outdoors or in areas subject to outdoor air conditions provide fail in place, electric operators with water proof enclosure, crankcase heater, and open and closed position limit switches. Valve and all accessories shall be constructed for outdoor use. All electrical devices shall be weather proof and NEMA 4 rated.
- c. All valves shall be provided with external position indicators and a speed control device to prevent too rapid closure.
- d. All valves shall be provided with manual override hand wheels for operating the valve.
- e. The valves shall be line size as shown on plans.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- f. Motorized isolation valves shall be Jamesbury 815/830L, Fisher, DeZurik Model HP II or Bray.

### F. Ball Valves

1. Furnish automatic full port ball valves for isolation requirements on line sizes up to 2' as shown on the drawings or required herein. All ball valves shall have ANSI 250 body rating. Valves shall have bronze body and stainless steel trim.
2. Valves shall close against a differential pressure equal to the design pump head pressure plus 10%.
3. The valves shall fail to their safe position upon power loss as specified in the sequence of operation.
4. All valves shall be provided with manual override.
5. Provide valve position indicator end switches with the actuator.
6. The valves shall be line size as shown on plans.
7. Motorized isolation valves shall be Nepronic, Dezurik or Siemens.

### G. Automatic Control Valves

1. General:
  - a. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type single seated globe type for two-position or modulating service as shown. Valves shall meet ANSI Class IV leakage rating.
  - b. Body pressure rating and connection type construction shall conform to pipe, fitting and valve schedules. Where pressure and flow combinations exceed ratings for commercial valves and operators, industrial class valves and operators shall be provided.
  - c. Valve operators shall be of pneumatic or electric type.
  - d. The valves shall be quiet in operation and fail-safe in either normally open or normally closed position in the event of power failure.
  - e. Control valve operators shall be sized to close against a differential pressure equal to the design pump head plus 10 percent.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- f. Furnish differential pressure control valves for all water systems as shown on plans and/or specified in the sequence of operations.
  - g. Provide valves 2" and smaller with screwed end bronze bodies and stainless steel trim. Provide valves 2-1/2" and larger with flanged ends, cast iron body and stainless steel trim.
  - h. For modulating service that require large valve size (above 6"), such as cooling tower temperature bypass, chiller head pressure ,etc. where proper control with globe type control valve cannot be achieved or the application is not economical butterfly or v-port ball valves are allowed.
2. Water Valves:
- a. Control valves shall be of equal percentage flow characteristics for modulating service.
  - b. Sizing Criteria:
    - 1) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil, 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
    - 2) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil, 5 psi maximum.
    - 3) Differential pressure service: 70% of design flow and 50% of pump head.
    - 4) Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
      - a) Heating coils in air handlers: normally open.
      - b) Chilled water control valves: normally closed.
      - c) Differential pressure valves: normally open.
      - d) Terminal units: normally closed.
      - e) Other applications; as required by sequences of operation.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## H. Air Flow Measuring Stations

### 1. Fan Inlet Type:

- a. Provide where indicated on the plans, airflow measuring stations of fan inlet type. Airflow traverse probes shall be suitable for mounting in the inlet bell(s) of the indicated fan.
- b. Probes shall be provided with the appropriate end support brackets for mounting in the inlet bell(s). Where fans are of dual inlet type, two sets of inlet probes shall be provided.
- c. Fan inlet probes shall be provided with the fittings to allow for the connection of control tubing to the probe assemblies.
- d. Probes shall be capable of operating with an accuracy of 3% of actual volume over the fan operating range.
- e. The installation of the air flow measuring stations shall be coordinated with contractor providing the installation of sheet metal ductwork to ensure actual accuracy and accessibility for maintenance.
- f. The installation of the air flow measuring stations shall be coordinated with contractor providing the installation of sheet metal ductwork to ensure actual accuracy and accessibility for maintenance.
- g. Fan inlet probes shall be Tek-Air T-FP7000.

### 2. Duct Mounted Type:

- a. Provide where indicated on the plans, airflow traverse probes of the insertion type, capable of continuously measuring air volume in the duct served.
- b. Probes shall utilize multiple total and suction pressure measurement points, located along the length of the probe surface in accordance with ASHRAE recommendations for duct traversing.
- c. The probes shall provide measurement accuracy within  $\pm 2\%$  of actual velocity when used with the appropriate conversion formula.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- d. Probes shall be of cylindrical cross section and shall indicate no more than a  $\pm 3\%$  percent deviation from the centerline velocity at a yaw angles up to 30 degrees.
  - e. Probes shall be constructed of extruded aluminum, unless dictated otherwise by service requirements. Probes over sixteen inches long shall be supported on the insertion end.
  - f. Probe quantities for each location shall be sufficient to meet ASHRAE recommendations.
  - g. The pressure drop created by the traverse probes shall not be greater ten percent of the velocity pressure at the maximum design flow.
  - h. The probes shall not amplify sound levels in the duct. The manufacturer shall provide submittal data indicating the developed differential pressure and pressure loss at the minimum and maximum design air flows for each duct location.
  - i. Traverse probes shall be Tek-Air model T-FP5000.
- I. Binary temperature devices
- 1. Line-voltage space thermostat:
    - a. Line-voltage thermostats shall be bimetal-actuated, snap acting SPDT contact, enclosed, UL listed for electrical rating. The thermostat cover shall provide exposed set point adjustment knob. The thermostat shall operate within the 55°F to 85°F setpoint range, with 2°F maximum differential.
  - 2. Low-temperature safety thermostat:
    - a. Low-limit air stream thermostats shall be UL listed, vapor pressure type, with a sensing element of 20 ft. minimum length. Element shall respond to the lowest temperature sensed by any 1 ft. section. The low-limit thermostat shall be automatic reset, SPDT type.
  - 3. Aquastat:
    - a. Strap-on type thermostats shall be provided for low or high temperature limit service on hot water or steam condensate pipes. The thermostats shall be UL listed, with a liquid-filled bulb type sensing element and capillary tubing. The thermostat shall operate

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

within the 20°F to 120°F, or 100°F to 240°F, setpoint range, with an adjustable 6°F differential.

- b. The low-limit thermostat shall be automatic reset, snap acting SPDT type with concealed set point adjustment.

## J. Temperature sensors

1. Provide the following instrumentation as required by the monitoring, control and optimization functions. All temperature sensor shall use platinum RTD elements only, nickel or silicon are not acceptable. All control signals shall be via a 4-20 mA loop.
2. Room Temperature:
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +40/+90 F (+40/120 F for high temp alarms)
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
3. Liquid Immersion Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F or +70/+220 F
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustment none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
4. Duct (Single Point) Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
5. Duct (Averaging) Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F
  - b. Output signal 4 - 20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
6. Outside Air Temperature
- a. Temperature monitoring range -50/+122
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
- K. Dew point/humidity sensors
1. Outside Air Dew Point Temperature
- a. Dew point monitoring range -40/+115 F DP, 12% to 99% RH
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - d. Factory calibration point 70 F
  - e. Accuracy at calibration point +2.0 Fdp
2. Room/duct Relative Humidity
- a. Sensor Humidity range 0 to 100%
  - b. Operating temperature 15 F to +170 F
  - c. Accuracy +2% RH
  - d. Sensing element Capacitive sensor
  - e. Output signal 4-20 mA DC
  - f. Installation adjustments zero & span
  - g. Operating temperature 15 F to +170 F
  - h. Voltage requirement 12-36 VDC
- L. Pressure sensors
1. Air Static Pressure Sensor
- a. Duct Static range -.5 to + 7.5"wg
  - b. Accuracy + .05" w.g.
  - c. Output signal 4 - 20 mA
- M. Water differential pressure sensor
1. Transducer shall have linear output signal. Zero and span shall be field adjustable.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
3. Water pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and block and bleed valves.
4. Water differential pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Over range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 300 psi. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and three valve manifold.
5. Provide industrial grade differential pressure sensors for all differential pressure bypass valves. Sensor shall be factory calibrated for operating range and rated for system pressure. Provide manufacturers standard 316 stainless steel, 3 valve manifold and pressure gauges for supply and return pressures. Output shall be 4-20 ma. Sensor shall be Rosemount 1151DP, with 316 stainless steel or approved equal.

### N. Differential pressure switches

#### 1. Water Differential Pressure Switch

- a. Differential pressure type switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum), NEMA 1 enclosure, with scale range and differential suitable for intended application or as shown.
- b. The differential switches shall meet the following requirements:
  - 1) Range 8 to 70 psi
  - 2) Differential 3 psi
  - 3) Maximum differential pressure 200 psi
  - 4) Maximum pressure 325 psi

#### 2. Air Differential Pressure Switch

- a. Differential pressure switches shall be diaphragm type, with die-cast aluminum housing and adjustable set point. Switch rating shall be a minimum 5 amps at 120 VAC. Switches shall be SPDT and be used for fan status as specified in the point schedule. Switch

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

pressure range shall be suited for application. (e.g. filter 0-2.0", fan status 0-5.0", etc.)

- O. Analog water level sensors
  - 1. Furnish and install full height, analog level sensors for each location as specified. Sensor shall provide 4-20ma signal in proportion to basin water level. Provide waterproof enclosure and mounting hardware as required. Sensor shall be Drexel Brook or equal.
  
- P. Water leak detection system
  - 1. General:
    - a. Furnish and install a complete water detection system for each area specified. The system shall include electronic alarm and locating modules, sensing cable, graphic maps and all auxiliary equipment. The system shall simultaneously detect the presence of water at any point along the cables length, sound an alarm and pinpoint the distance to the leak. The sensing cable shall be of such construction that no metallic parts shall be exposed to the environment. The system shall provide pre-connectorized sensing cable and components. The system shall be UL listed and FM approved.
    - b. The system shall be as manufactured by Raychem Corporation or equal.
    - c. Locating leak detection panel (TTB-FA)
    - d. The alarm and locator module, TTB-FA, shall monitor up to a maximum of 1000 feet of sensing cable. The alarm module shall indicate that water has contacted the sensing cable by sounding an audible alarm, actuating an output relay, sending a proportional 4-20 mA signal to the BMS and displaying the distance from the start of the sensing cable to the start of the first contact with water. The location of the first water contact shall be retained on the display until the cable is dry and the module is updated.
    - e. The alarm module shall be capable of detecting the presence of a 1 inch leak anywhere along the cable with a repeatability of +/- 1%.
    - f. The alarm module shall continuously monitor the sensing cables and interconnecting cables for continuity. Any break in the cable shall generate an audible alarm, activate an output relay and activate a "continuity" LED on the face of the module.





## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. The sensing cable shall offer distributed sensing with the ability to detect the location of water at any point along the length of the cable. The cable shall be flexible, and carry less than 24VDC under normal conditions.
  - c. The system shall not alarm when in contact with any metallic equipment such as drip pans, floor tile supports, conduit, etc.
  - d. The cable shall be available in modular, pre-connectorized lengths of 5, 10, 15, 25 and 50 feet. Field splicing shall not be acceptable.
  - e. The cable shall be UL 910 rated and plenum rated per NEC 725-2(b).
  - f. Provide two sets of test instrumentation to owner.
4. Jumper cable
- a. Jumper cable shall be used where leak detection cable is not required but continuity is required (in raceways between alarm module and floor surface, etc.). The jumper cable shall be plenum rated and jacketed with fluoropolymer materials, per NEC 725-2(b). The jumper cable shall consist of four different colors (Y, B, R, G), insulated 18 AWG wires and shall be available in pre-connectorized lengths of 5, 10, 15, 25 and 50 feet.
5. Accessories
- a. Provide all end connectors, leader cables, hold down clips, caution tags, spray adhesive (3M 90M) as required.
6. Graphic display map
- a. Provide a graphic display map for each room served. The map shall be a 1/8 in = 1.0 ft scaled drawing of the area served, indicating actual equipment locations, floor tile and other points of reference. The actual cable routing shall be clearly marked on the map with actual scaled distances every 10 feet.
  - b. A dynamic graphic display, equivalent to the aforementioned map, shall be duplicated on the BMS operator workstation. The area in alarm (within 5 feet) shall blink in red until the alarm is cleared.
7. Performance

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. A maximum wetted area of 2 inches of cable, at any point along the entire length of cable, shall activate an alarm.
- b. The system shall be continuously monitored for continuity. The loss of continuity shall cause an alarm within 5 seconds.
- c. The cable shall be capable of being cleaned with a clean dry cloth, in place.
- d. The cable shall dry and reset the module immediately upon removal from free water. No shaking, wiping or mechanical action shall be required.

### 8. Installation

- a. All system components shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The manufacturer shall provide necessary installer training and supervision as required.
- b. The cable shall be installed on clean, dry finished surfaces only (coordinate access and schedule installation as required) after the possibility of physical damage has been eliminated. The cable shall be fastened to the surface it is monitoring every 4 feet with hold down clips and spray mastic adhesive. Hold down clip installation shall be subject to spot checks during commissioning. If any clip fails, all other clips shall be re-attached and retested, at no additional cost.
- c. The system shall be commissioned prior to acceptance. Submit a test procedure for approval.

### 9. Warranty

- a. All equipment shall be warranted to the same extent as the BMS system, or per the manufacturer's warranty, whichever is greater.

### Q. Vortex shedding flow meters

1. Provide vortex shedding flow meter for steam metering locations. Meter shall be pressure and temperature compensated, rated for service conditions and be manufactured by Endress and Hauser model FTV 1810 or approved equal. Provide remote readout of pressure, flow, MLb/Hr and total MLb.
2. Coordinate location to provide proper straight run of pipe, pipe size, etc.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Power 24VDC power supply as required from Emergency source.
4. BMS system shall monitor Mlb/Hr, Mlb total, pressure and temperature values.

### R. Indoor air quality (Co2/VOC) sensors

1. Provide indoor air quality sensors to monitor Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) levels.
2. The sensors shall be of microprocessor-based photo-acoustic type with heated stannic dioxide semiconductor.
3. The CO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall have no more than 1% drift during the first year of operation and minimal drift thereafter so that no calibration will be required.
4. The units shall be wall or duct mounted type as indicated on plans and in the sequence of operation.
5. Wall mounted sensors shall be provided with white plastic cover, without LED indicators.
6. Duct mounted sensors shall be provided with LED indicators in a dust proof plastic housing with transparent cover.
7. The VOC sensor shall have automatic self-calibrating capability to ensure accuracy.
8. The sensor shall meet the following requirements:
  - a. Operating voltage: 24 VAC +/- 20%
  - b. Frequency: 50/60 Hz
  - c. Power consumption: max. 6 VA
  - d. CO<sub>2</sub> measuring range: 0 – 2000 ppm
  - e. Tolerance: +/- 100 ppm
  - f. Output: 0 – 10 VAC
  - g. Calibration: none required
  - h. VOC measurement range: 0 – 10 V VOC
  - i. Permissible air velocity in duct: <26.2 Ft/s.
9. The sensors shall be model:
  - a. Siemens QPA63 Series.
  - b. MSA AirOX

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### S. Relays

1. Control relays shall be UL listed plug-in type with dust cover and LED “energized” indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
2. Time delay relays shall be UL listed solid-state plug-in type with adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable  $\pm 200\%$  (minimum) from set point shown on plans. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure when not installed in local control panel.

### T. Override timers

1. Override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration as required by application. Provide 0-to-6-hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Timer shall be suitable for flush mounting on control panel face and located on local control panels or where shown.
2. Current transmitters.
3. AC current transmitters shall be the self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4 to 20 mA two-wire output. Unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A full scale, with internal zero and span adjustment and  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale accuracy at 500 ohm maximum burden.
4. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA Recognized.
5. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.

### U. Current transformers

1. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized and completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
2. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for  $\pm 1\%$  accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
3. Transformers shall be fixed-core or split-core type for installation on new or existing wiring, respectively.

### V. Voltage transmitters

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4 to 20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.
2. 2 Ranges shall include 100 to 130 VAC, 200 to 250 VAC, 250 to 330 VAC, and 400 to 600 VAC full-scale, adjustable, with  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale accuracy with 500 ohm maximum burden.
3. Transmitters shall be UL/CSA Recognized at 600 VAC rating and meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements.

### W. Voltage transformers

1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized, 600 VAC rated, complete with built-in fuse protection.
2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of 4°C to 55°C (40°F to 130°F) and shall provide  $\pm 0.5\%$  accuracy at 24 VAC and a 5 VA load.
3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic material.

### X. Power monitors

1. Power monitors shall be the three-phase type furnished with three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly, UL Listed voltage transformers, and UL Listed split-core current transformers.
2. They shall provide a selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading and a 4 to 20 mA output for kW reading. They shall operate with 5 A current inputs with a maximum error of  $\pm 2\%$  at 1.0 power factor or  $\pm 2.5\%$  at 0.5 power factor.

### Y. Current switches

1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. The switches shall be selected to match the current of the application and output requirements of the DDC system.

### Z. Pressure-electric (pe) switches

1. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuated, operating pressure rated 0-175 kPa (0-25 psig), with calibrated scale set point range of 14-125 kPa (2-18 psig) minimum, UL listed.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Provide one or two-stage switch action SPDT, DPST, or DPDT, as required by application. Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and/or for motor control.
3. Shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation. Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
4. Shall have a permanent indicating gauge on each pneumatic signal line to PE switches.

### AA. Local control panels

1. All indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with (hinged door) key-lock latch and removable sub panels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and sub panels.
2. Interconnections between internal and face mounted devices shall be prewired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
3. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

### BB. Local user display

1. Where specified in the sequence of operation or points list, the controllers on the peer to peer building level network shall have a display and keypad for local interface. A keypad shall be provided for interrogating and commanding points in the controller.
2. The display shall use the same security password and access rights for points in the display as is used in the associated controller.
3. The LCD display shall be a minimum of a 2 line 40 character display.
4. The LCD display shall include the full point name, value (numeric, digital or state text), point priority and alarm status on one screen.
5. The LCD shall dynamically update the value, priority, and alarm status for the point being displayed.
6. The display shall be mounted either on the door of the enclosure or remote from the controller.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.10 Communication and Control Wiring

### A. General:

1. Provide copper wiring, plenum cable, and raceways as specified in the applicable sections of Division 16 unless otherwise noted herein.
2. All insulated wire to be copper conductors, UL labeled for 90°C minimum service.

### B. Wire Sizing and Insulation

1. Wiring shall comply with minimum wire size and insulation based on services listed below:

a.	Service	Minimum Gage/Type	Insulation Class
b.	AC 24V Power	12 Ga Solid	600 Volt
c.	DC 24V Power	10 Ga Solid	600 Volt
d.	Class 1	14 Ga Stranded	600 Volt
e.	Class 2	18 Ga Stranded	300 Volt
f.	Class 3	18 Ga Stranded	300 Volt

2. Provide plenum-rated cable when open cable is permitted in supply or return air plenum where allowed per execution specifications defined in Paragraph 3.07

### C. Power Wiring:

1. 115V power circuit wiring above 100 feet distance shall use minimum 10 gage.
2. 24V control power wiring above 200 feet distance shall use minimum 12 gage.

### D. Control Wiring:

1. Digital Input/Output wiring shall use Class 2 twisted pair, insulated.
2. Analog inputs shall use Class 2 twisted shielded pair, insulated and jacketed and require a grounded shield.
3. Actuators with tri-state control shall use 3 conductor with same characteristics



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Communication Wiring
  - 1. Ethernet Cable shall be minimum CAT5
  - 2. Secondary level network shall be 24 gage, TSP, low capacitance cable
- F. Approved Cable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Wiring from the following manufacturers which meet the above criteria shall be acceptable:
    - a. Anixter
    - b. Belden

### 2.11 Fiber Optic Cable System

- A. Fiber Optic cable: Optical cables shall be duplex 900 mm tight-buffer construction designed for intra-building environments. The sheath shall be UL Listed OFNP in accordance with NEC Article 770. The optical fiber shall meet the requirements of FDDI, ANSI X3T9.5 PMD for 62.5/125mm for use in 10/100 MB fiber optic networks.
- B. Connectors: All optical fibers shall be field-terminated with ST type connectors. Connectors shall have hot melt and polish or epoxy and polish type connectors. No Mechanical crimp type permitted.
- C. Outdoor/underground installation of Fiber Optic cable shall be gel coated and rated for outdoor/underground installation
- D. Four strands is the minimum required for each run, two for the link and two as spares.
- E. 1 GB Ethernet networks shall be single mode fiber for lengths over 275m. Single mode Ethernet requires two strands of 9 um cable

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.01 Examination:

- A. Examine the project drawings, specifications and existing conditions at the site for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the architect/engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Inspect the site to verify that new equipment may be installed. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. Examine the drawings and specifications for other portions of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the drawings and specifications and the work and the plans of the contractor providing the work under this Section and the work of other trades, Sections and Divisions - report these discrepancies to the engineer and obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the work of this Section with the work of others.

### 3.02 Protection

- A. Protect all work and material from damage during construction, startup and testing.
- B. The contractor providing the work under this Section is responsible for its work and equipment until it has been accepted by the Owner.
- C. Correct all damage caused prior to acceptance by the Owner.

### 3.03 Coordination

- A. Site
  - 1. Project coordination between trades is the responsibility of the Contractor having the direct contract with the Owner for the Project (Refer to Division 0 & Division 1).
  - 2. The contractor providing the work under this Section shall follow the Contractor's Project schedule and coordinate all project related activities through the Contactor except as otherwise agreed.
  - 3. Where the work of this Section will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with work of other trades, the Contractor shall facilitate communication among all trades affected and shall coordinate space conditions required to accommodate the work of all trades.
- B. Test and Balance
  - 1. Furnish a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system to the TAB agent for test and balance purposes.
  - 2. Provide TAB Agent training in the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of 4 hours.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Provide a qualified BAS technician to accompany TAB Agent and to assist in the test and balance process.
4. The tools used during the test and balance process shall be returned to the contractor providing the work of this Section at the completion of testing and balancing.

### C. Life Safety

1. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are supplied under Division 26 of this specification. Interlock smoke detectors to air handlers for shutdown.
2. Fire/smoke dampers and actuators required for fire rated walls are provided under another Section of Division 23. Control of these dampers shall be by Division 26.

### D. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions.

1. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the control system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the contractor providing the work of this Section as follows:
  - a. Provide a complete, fully integrated, fully interfaced and fully functioning BAS system as described in the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications, Addendums and all post Bid Modifications) regardless of where in the Contract Documents other controls requiring interface and connection to the BAS are specified.
  - b. Each provider of controls products specified under other Sections and Divisions, regardless of the Section provided under, is responsible for the fully coordinated configuration, programming, startup, and testing of those products to meet the sequences of operation and the requirements of the Contract Documents. Each provider of controls products shall provide the contractor providing the work under this Section with all support, as necessary, through local representatives, factory trained startup and service technicians and controls specialists residing at the factory where the products were manufactured to meet the requirements of subparagraph "1.a" above.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. Coordinate and resolve all incompatibility issues that arise between the control products provided under this Section and those provided under other Sections and Divisions of this specification or shown on the Drawings. This coordination and resolution of issues should be performed prior to the submittal of product data and shop drawings.
- d. Provide all communication media (wiring, devices, and equipment) for and between all control products specified in this Section and as specified in other Sections and Divisions of the Project Manual for this Project as specified in Part 2, "Communication" of this specification.

### 3.04 General Workmanship

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install all equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by Chapter 1, Article 100, Part A of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- D. Verify integrity of all wiring to ensure continuity and the absence of all shorts and grounds.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility.
- F. All work shall be executed in compliance all adopted codes, statutes and regulations and all standards referenced therein.

### 3.05 Field Quality Control

- A. Provide a Six (6) Sigma certified quality manager on staff to inspect the project execution and to enforce quality standards.
- B. Continually supervise and monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship.
- C. Provide all inspections, tests, commissioning and reports specified in this Section and in other Sections and Divisions of the Contract Documents related to the providing of control products and BAS.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.06 Existing Equipment

- A. Wiring: Existing wires not in use may be reused. The integrity of the wire and its proper application to the installation are the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section. The wire shall be properly identified and tested in accordance with this specification. Unless indicated otherwise unused or abandoned control wiring shall be removed and become the property of the contractor, unless specifically noted or shown to be reused. Where it is not practical to remove unused or abandoned wiring, it shall be left in place and shall be clearly identified and labeled as such.
- B. Local Control Panels: Existing local control panels may be reused to locate new equipment. All unused equipment and wiring within these panels shall be removed. Panel face cover shall be patched to fill all holes caused by removal of unused equipment or replaced with new. Existing panels removed become the property of the contractor.
- C. Unless otherwise directed, the contractor is not responsible for the repairs or replacement of existing equipment and systems, valves, dampers, or actuators. Should the contractor find existing equipment that requires maintenance, notify the engineer in writing within 2 work days of discovering the issue or deficiency.
- D. Temperature Sensor Wells: Existing wells in piping for temperature sensors may be reused. These wells shall be modified as required for proper fit of new sensors.
- E. Indicator Gauges: Where these devices remain and are not removed, they shall be made operational and recalibrated to ensure accuracy.
- F. Room Thermostats: Shall be removed and become the property of the contractor, unless otherwise noted.
- G. Electronic Sensors and Transmitters: Unless specifically noted otherwise, become the property of the contractor.
- H. Controllers and Auxiliary Electronic Devices: Become the property of the contractor.
- I. Damper Actuators, Linkages, and Appurtenances: Become the property of the contractor.
- J. Control Valves: Become the property of the contractor.
- K. The mechanical system shall remain in operation between the hours of 6 a.m. and 6 p.m., Monday through Friday. No modifications to the system shall cause the mechanical system to be shut down for more than 15 minutes or to fail to maintain space comfort conditions during those time periods. Perform cutover of

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

controls that cannot meet the conditions outside of those hours. The building's system may be operated during scheduled hours by time-clock devices or an existing control system. It is important that the systems continue to operate under the programmed schedule while the installation of the new control system is in progress.

- L. The scheduling of fans through existing or temporary time clocks or control system shall be maintained throughout the DDC system installation.
- M. Install control panels where required.
- N. Modify existing starter control circuits, if necessary, to provide hand/off/auto control of each starter controlled. If new starters or starter control packages are required, these shall be included as part of this contract.
- O. Patch holes and finish to match existing materials and colors.

### 3.07 Wiring

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and Division 26 of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from those in Division 26, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL Listed and installed in conduit according to NEC and Division 26 requirements.
- C. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements and installed in conduit according to NEC and Division 26 requirements. (Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.)
- D. Do not install Class 2 wiring in conduit containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).
- E. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or wire nut. All wire-to-wire connections shall be at a terminal strip or wire nut.
- F. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- G. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, provide step-down transformers or interposing relays.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- H. All wiring in conduit shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points or junction boxes.
- I. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- J. Size and type of conduit and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, NEC requirements and Division 26 requirements.
- K. Include one pull string in each conduit 3/4 in. or larger.
- L. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures can include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- M. Conceal all conduit, except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install conduit to maintain a minimum clearance of 6 in. from high-temperature equipment (e.g., hot pipes or flues).
- N. Secure conduit with conduit clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Conduit and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Conduits may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- O. Terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and maintain updated (as-built) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- P. Flexible metal conduits and liquid-tight, flexible metal conduits shall not exceed 3 ft in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal conduit less than 1/2 in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal conduits shall be used.
- Q. Conduit shall be adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Conduit sections shall be joined with couplings. Terminations shall be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

### 3.08 Communication Wiring

- A. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- B. Do not install communication wiring in raceway and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during installation.
- D. Verify the integrity of the entire network following the cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- E. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor shall be installed between the lines and ground. The lightning arrestor shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- F. All runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced length when that length is commercially available.
- G. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.
- H. Grounding of coaxial cable shall be in accordance with NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."

### 3.09 Fiber Optic Cable System

- A. Maximum pulling tensions as specified by the cable manufacturer shall not be exceeded during installation. Post-installation residual cable tension shall be within cable manufacturer's specifications.
  - B. All cabling and associated components shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Minimum cable and unjacketed fiber bend radii, as specified by cable manufacturer, shall be maintained.
  - C. All terminations need to be made into a patch panel, designed for such use. Free air terminations with patch panels are prohibited.
- A. Conduit, Raceways and Piping Support
- 1. Raceways, conduit and piping shall be supported every 6feet for horizontal runs and every 8feet for vertical runs.
  - 2. Conduit, raceways and piping above suspended ceilings shall be supported from or anchored to structural members and shall not be supported by or anchored to other electrical raceways, ceiling support systems or mechanical systems.

### 3.10 Installation Of Sensors

- A. General:



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which the sensor operates.
  3. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by the wall framing.
  4. All wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor readings.
  5. Sensors used in mixing plenums and hot and cold decks shall be of the averaging type.
  6. Low-limit sensors used in mixing plenums shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across the full face of the coil.
  7. All pipe-mounted temperature sensors shall be installed in wells. Install all liquid temperature sensors with heat-conducting fluid in thermal wells.
  8. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall, complete with sun shield at designated location.
- B. Room Instrument Mounting
1. Room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted thermostats and sensors located in occupied spaces shall be mounted 48 inches above the finished floor unless otherwise shown.
- C. Instrumentation Installed in Piping Systems
1. Thermometers and temperature sensing elements installed in liquid systems shall be installed in thermowells.
  2. Gauges in piping systems subject to pulsation shall have snubbers.
  3. Gauges for steam service shall have pigtail fittings with isolation valve.
- D. Duct Smoke Detectors
1. Duct smoke detectors shall be provided by the contractor responsible for providing the Fire Alarm System. The contractor responsible for providing the sheet metal ductwork shall install the duct smoke detectors in supply and return air ducts.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Connect the DDC System to the auxiliary contacts provided on the Smoke Detector as required for system safeties and to provide alarms to the DDC system.

### E. Occupancy Sensors

1. A sufficient quantity of occupancy sensors shall be provided to provide complete coverage of the area (room or space).
2. Occupancy sensors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 requirements and the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Occupancy sensors shall not be located within 1.8 m (6 feet) of HVAC outlets or heating ducts.
4. PIR and dual-technology PIR/ultrasonic sensors shall not be installed where they can "see" beyond any doorway.
5. Ultrasonic sensors shall not be installed in spaces containing ceiling fans.
6. Sensors shall detect motion to within 0.6 m (2 feet) of all room entrances and shall not trigger due to motion outside the room.
7. The off-delay timer shall be set to 15 minutes unless otherwise shown.
8. All sensor adjustments shall be made prior to beneficial occupancy, but after installation of furniture systems, shelving, partitions, etc.
9. Each controlled area shall have one hundred percent coverage capable of detecting small hand-motion movements, accommodating all occupancy habits of single or multiple occupants at any location within the controlled room.

### F. Temperature Limit Switch

1. A temperature limit switch (Low Temperature Detector) shall be provided to sense the temperature.
2. A sufficient number of temperature limit switches shall be installed to provide complete coverage of the duct section.
3. Manual reset limit switches shall be installed in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. The temperature limit switch sensing element shall be installed in a serpentine pattern and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
  5. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip. Provide 3 m of sensing element for each 1 m<sup>2</sup> (1 ft of sensing element for each 1 ft<sup>2</sup>) of coil area.
- G. Averaging Temperature Sensing Elements
1. Sensing elements shall be installed in a serpentine pattern.
  2. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner vertically across the duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.
- H. Air Flow Measuring Stations (AFMS)
1. Outside Air AFMSs shall be located downstream from the Outside Air filters.
  2. Pitot Tube type AFMS shall not be used if the expected velocity measurement is below 3.5 m/s (700 fpm) [or for outside airflow measurements].
- I. Differential air static pressure.
1. Supply Duct Static Pressure: Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the high-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor (if applicable) or to the location of the duct high-pressure tap and leave open to the plenum.
  2. Return Duct Static Pressure: Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the low-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor.
  3. Building Static Pressure: Pipe the low-pressure port of the pressure sensor to the static pressure port located on the outside of the building through a high-volume accumulator. Pipe the high-pressure port to a location behind a thermostat cover.
  4. The piping to the pressure ports on all pressure transducers shall contain a capped test port located adjacent to the transducer.
  5. All pressure transducers, other than those controlling VAV boxes, shall be located in field device panels, not on the equipment monitored or on ductwork.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. Mount transducers in a location accessible for service without use of ladders or special equipment.

### J. Water Differential pressure sensors

1. Differential pressure sensors shall be installed with valved taps into the piping to ensure serviceability without draining the system
2. Sensors shall be mounted with bleed valves
3. After sensor installation any air shall be eliminated using the bleed valves to ensure reading accuracy
4. The sensors shall be located to ensure accessibility

### K. Relative Humidity Sensors

1. Relative humidity sensors in supply air ducts shall be installed at least 3m (10 feet) downstream of humidity injection elements.

### L. Flowmeters

1. The minimum straight unobstructed piping for the flowmeter installation shall be at least 10 pipe diameters upstream and at least 5 pipe diameters downstream and/or in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

### M. Flow Switch

1. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
2. Adjust flow switch in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.11 Wireless Transceiver Installation:

- A. Mount transceivers in a grid like pattern not exceeding more than 25 - 100 feet line of sight between devices. Location of each transceiver shall be optimally chosen to get the best line of sight between it and at least two of its neighbors.  
**[ID: 140]**
- B. Transceivers may be mounted in the plenum space. Transceivers mounted in a metal enclosure shall utilize a remote mount antenna attached outside the metal enclosure to maintain adequate signal strength.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. All transceiver antennas shall be oriented in the vertical plane for proper RF communication.
- D. Once installed ensure good communication is taking place between each device and at least two of its neighbors. Install extra transceivers if necessary to act as routers/repeaters for isolated devices with poor communication to the network.
- E. Provide a test report to the Owner demonstrating that the communication between all devices on the wireless network is functioning at the proper speeds, security and quality of signal.

### 3.12 Flow Switch Installation

- A. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
- B. Adjust flow switch in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.13 Actuators

- A. Mount and link control damper actuators according to manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. To compress seals when spring-return actuators are used on normally closed dampers, power actuator to approximately 5° open position, manually close the damper, and then tighten the linkage.
  - 2. Check operation of damper/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
  - 3. Provide all mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
- B. Electric/Electronic
  - 1. Dampers: Actuators shall be direct-mounted on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. For low-leakage dampers with seals, the actuator shall be mounted with a minimum 5° available for tightening the damper seals. Actuators shall be mounted following manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 2. Valves: Actuators shall be connected to valves with adapters approved by the actuator manufacturer. Actuators and adapters shall be mounted following the actuator manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.14 Warning labels and identification tags

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- A. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all equipment that can be automatically started by the DDC system.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows: “C A U T I O N This equipment is operating under automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch disconnect to “Off” position before servicing.”
  
- B. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all motor starters and all control panels that are connected to multiple power sources utilizing separate disconnects.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows: “C A U T I O N This equipment is fed from more than one power source with separate disconnects. Disconnect all power sources before servicing.”
  
- C. Equipment and Device labeling:
  - 1. Labels and tags shall be keyed to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings.
  - 2. All Enclosures and DDC Hardware shall be labeled.
  - 3. All sensors and actuators not in occupied areas shall be tagged.
  - 4. Airflow measurement arrays shall be tagged to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMS flow coefficient.
  - 5. Duct static pressure taps shall be tagged at the location of the pressure tap.
  - 6. Tags shall be plastic or metal and shall be mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.
  - 7. Labels exterior to protective enclosures shall be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware.
  - 8. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but shall not be hand written.
  - 9. Identify all other control components with permanent labels. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

10. Identify room sensors relating to terminal box or valves with nameplates.
11. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.

### D. Identification of Tubing and Wiring

1. All wiring and cabling including that within factory-fabricated panels shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with the DDC address or termination number.
2. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
3. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with a descriptive identifier.

### 3.15 Identification Of Hardware And Wiring

- A. All wiring and cabling, including that within factory-fabricated panels shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with the DDC address or termination number.
- B. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with a descriptive identifier.
- C. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
- D. Identify control panels with minimum 1 cm (½ in.) letters on laminated plastic nameplates.
- E. Identify all other control components with permanent labels. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.
- F. Identify room sensors relating to terminal box or valves with nameplates.
- G. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- H. Identifiers shall match record documents.

### 3.16 Programming

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25% of available memory free within the primary controller for future use.
- B. Point Naming: System point names shall be modular in design, allowing easy operator interface without the use of a written point index. Point Naming standard shall be agreed upon between owner and the contractor providing work under this Section. Refer to Submittals section in the General Section.
- C. Software Programming
  - 1. Provide programming for the system and adhere to the sequences of operation provided. Provide all other system programming necessary for the operation of the system, but not specified in this document. Imbed into the control program sufficient comment statements to clearly describe each section of the program. The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequences of operation and be of different font and color in text editor. Use the appropriate technique based on one of the following programming types:
    - a. Text-based:
      - 1) Shall provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Shall be modular and structured
      - 3) Shall be commented
      - 4) Shall provide line by line programing and compilation wizard to allow for ease of editing.
    - b. Graphic-based:
      - 1) Shall provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Shall provide programing and compilation wizard to allow for ease of editing.
      - 3) Shall be documented
- D. Operator Interface
  - 1. Standard graphics—Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as set points.
  - 2. Show terminal equipment information on a “graphic” summary table. Provide dynamic information for each point shown.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Provide all the labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.
4. Provide necessary programming to create all reports referred to in Part 2 Operator Interface Software

### 3.17 Control system checkout and testing

- A. Perform a three-phase commissioning procedure consisting of field I/O calibration and commissioning, system commissioning and integrated system program commissioning. Document all commissioning information on commissioning data sheets that shall be submitted prior to acceptance testing. Commissioning work that requires shutdown of system or deviation from normal function shall be performed when the operation of the system is not required. The commissioning shall be coordinated with the owner and construction manager to ensure systems are available when needed. Notify the operating personal in writing of the testing schedule so that authorized personnel from the owner and construction manager are present throughout the commissioning procedure.
- B. Phase I – Field I/O Calibration and Commissioning
  1. Verify that each control panel has been installed according to plans, specifications and approved shop drawings. Calibrate, test, and have signed off each control sensor and device. Commissioning to include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Sensor accuracy at 10, 50 and 90% of range.
    - b. Sensor range.
    - c. Verify analog limit and binary alarm reporting.
    - d. Point value reporting.
    - e. Binary alarm and switch settings.
    - f. Actuator and positioner spring ranges if pneumatic actuation is utilized.
    - g. Fail safe operation on loss of control signal, pneumatic air, electric power, network communications, etc.
- C. Phase II – System Commissioning
  1. Each BMS program shall be put on line and commissioned. Demonstrate each programmed sequence of operation in the presence of the owner and construction manager and compare the results in writing to the specified sequences of operation. In addition, each control loop shall be tested to

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

verify proper response and stable control, within specified accuracy. System program test results shall be recorded on commissioning data sheets and submitted for record. Any discrepancies between the specification and the actual performance will be immediately rectified and re-tested.

### D. Phase III - Integrated System Program Commissioning

1. Tests shall include, but not be limited to:
  - a. Data communication, both normal and failure modes.
  - b. Fully loaded system response time.
  - c. Impact of component failures on system performance and system operation.
  - d. Time/Date changes.
  - e. End of month/ end of year operation.
  - f. Season changeover.
  - g. Global application programs and point sharing.
  - h. System backup and reloading.
  - i. System status displays.
  - j. Diagnostic functions.
  - k. Power failure routines.
  - l. Battery backup.
  - m. Smoke Control, vents, in concert with Fire Alarm System testing.
  - n. Testing of all electrical and HVAC systems with other division of work.
  - o. Year 2000 compliance test.
2. Sub Systems shall also be tested and commissioned.
3. Submit for approval, a detailed acceptance test procedure designed to demonstrate compliance with contractual requirements. This Acceptance test procedure will take place after the commissioning procedure but before final acceptance, to verify that sensors and control devices maintain specified accuracy and the system performance does not degrade over time.
4. Using the commissioning test data sheets, demonstrate each point. Also demonstrate 100 percent of the system functions. Demonstrate all points and system functions until all devices and functions meet specification.
5. Provide all instruments for testing. Instruments required by the Owner for routine maintenance shall be turned over to the Owner after acceptance testing.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. All test instruments shall be submitted for approval prior to their use in commissioning. Each instrument used shall have been calibrated within 12 months of the date of the test by a certified calibration service.
  - a. Test Instrument Accuracy:
    - 1) Temperature: 1/4F or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
    - 2) Pressure: High Pressure (PSI): 1/2 PSI or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
    - 3) Low Pressure: 1/2% of full scale (in w.c.)
    - 4) Humidity: 2% RH
    - 5) Electrical: 1/4% full scale
7. After the above tests are complete and the system is demonstrated to be functioning as specified, a thirty-day performance test period shall begin. If the system performs as specified throughout the test period, requiring only routine maintenance, the system shall be accepted. If the system fails during the test, and cannot be fully corrected within eight hours, the owner may request that commissioning and performance tests be repeated.

### E. Move In Checkout

1. Each floor shall be retested 24 hours prior to Owner move in. The test shall ensure all corrective work is complete and all systems are complete and functioning at 100%.

### F. Additional testing, debugging and fine tuning

1. Provide an additional 100 hours of BMS project manager, a controls technician or systems programmer, as required, to be used at the owner's discretion to test, debug and fine tune the system during standard business hours after Owner acceptance of the system within the first 12 months of operation.

## 3.18 Control system demonstration and acceptance

### A. Demonstration

1. Prior to acceptance, the control system shall undergo a series of performance tests to verify operation and compliance with this specification. These tests shall occur after the contractor providing the work under this Section has completed the installation, started up the system, and performed its own in-house QA/QC testing.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. The tests described in this section are to be performed in addition to the tests that the contractor providing the work under this Section performs as a necessary part of the installation, start-up, and debugging process and as specified in the “Control System Checkout and Testing” article in Part 3 of this specification. The engineer will be present to observe and review these tests. The engineer shall be notified at least 10 days in advance of the start of the testing procedures.
3. The demonstration process shall follow the process approved in Part 1, “Submittals.” The approved checklists and forms shall be completed for all systems as part of the demonstration.
4. Provide at least two persons equipped with two-way communication and shall demonstrate actual field operation of each control and sensing point for all modes of operation including day, night, occupied, unoccupied, fire/smoke alarm, seasonal changeover, and power failure modes. The purpose is to demonstrate the calibration, response, and action of every point and system. Any test equipment required to prove the proper operation shall be provided by and operated by the contractor providing the work under this Section.
5. As each control input and output is checked, a log shall be completed showing the date, technician’s initials, and any corrective action taken or needed.
6. Demonstrate compliance with Part 1, “System Performance.”
7. Demonstrate compliance with sequences of operation through all modes of operation.
8. Demonstrate complete operation of operator interface, graphics and points refresh cycles.
9. Additionally, the following items shall be demonstrated:
  - a. DDC control loop response. Supply trend data output in a graphical form showing the step response of each DDC control loop. The test shall show the loop’s response to a change in set point, which represents a change of actuator position of at least 25% of its full range. The sampling rate of the trend shall be from 10 seconds to 3 minutes, depending on the speed of the loop. The trend data shall show for each sample the set point, actuator position, and controlled variable values. Any loop that yields unreasonably under-damped or over-damped control shall be further tuned or replaced.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. Demand limiting. Supply a trend data output showing the action of the demand-limiting algorithm. The data shall document the action on a minute-by-minute basis over at least a 30-minute period. Included in the trend shall be building kW, demand limiting set point, and the status of shedable equipment outputs.
  - c. Optimum start/stop. Supply a trend data output showing the capability of the algorithm. The change-of value or change-of-state trends shall include the output status of all optimally started and stopped equipment, as well as temperature sensor inputs of affected areas.
  - d. Economizer Operation
  - e. CO2 and Demand Control Ventilation
  - f. Supply Air Temperature Reset
  - g. Supply Duct Static Pressure Reset
  - h. Interface to the building fire alarm system.
  - i. Operational logs for each system that indicate all set points, operating points, valve positions, mode, and equipment status shall be submitted to the architect/engineer. These logs shall cover three 48-hour periods and have a sample frequency of not more than 10 minutes. The logs shall be provided in both printed and electronic formats.
10. Any tests that fail to demonstrate the operation of the system shall be repeated at a later date. Prove any necessary repairs or revisions to the hardware or software to successfully complete all tests at no additional cost to the Owner.

### B. Acceptance

- 1. All tests described in this specification shall have been performed to the satisfaction of both the engineer and owner prior to the acceptance of the control system as meeting the requirements of completion. Any tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of the contractor providing the work under this Section may be exempt from the completion requirements if stated as such in writing by the engineer. Such tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. The system shall not be accepted until all forms and checklists completed as part of the demonstration are submitted and approved as required in Part 1, "Submittals."

### 3.19 Cleaning

- A. Clean up all debris resulting from their activities daily. Remove all cartons, containers, crates, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At the completion of work in any area, clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.
- C. At the completion of work, all equipment furnished under this section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be repaired to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

### 3.20 Training

- A. Provide competent instructors to give full instruction to designated personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system installed. Factory employed/certified instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. All training shall be held during normal work hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. weekdays.
- B. Provide a minimum of five (5) on-site, on-line, or classroom training sessions throughout the contract period for personnel designated by the owner. Each session shall be a minimum of eight (8) hours each.
- C. Provide two additional training sessions at 6 and 12 months following building's turnover. Each session shall be three days (8 hours each day) in length and shall be coordinated with the Owner.
- D. Provide 80 (Eighty) hours of site specific training for Owner's operating personnel. Training shall include:
  1. Day-to-day Operators:
    - a. Proficiently operate the system
    - b. Understand control system architecture and configuration
    - c. Understand DDC system components

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- d. Understand system operation, including DDC system control and optimizing routines (algorithms)
  - e. Operate the workstation and peripherals
  - f. Log on and off the system
  - g. Access graphics, point reports, and logs
  - h. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules
  - i. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphical visual signals
  - j. Understand system drawings and Operation and Maintenance manual
  - k. Understand the job layout and location of control components
  - l. Access data from DDC controllers and ASCs
  - m. Operate portable operator's terminals
2. Advanced Operators:
- a. Make and change graphics on the workstation
  - b. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including annunciation and routing of these
  - c. Create, delete, and modify point trend logs and graph or print these both on an ad-hoc basis and at user-definable time intervals
  - d. Create, delete, and modify reports
  - e. Add, remove, and modify system's physical points
  - f. Create, modify, and delete programming
  - g. Add panels when required
  - h. Add operator interface stations
  - i. Create, delete, and modify system displays, both graphical and others

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- j. Perform DDC system field checkout procedures
  - k. Perform DDC controller unit operation and maintenance procedures
  - l. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures
  - m. Perform DDC system diagnostic procedures
  - n. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points
  - o. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware
  - p. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components
3. System Managers/Administrators:
- a. Maintain software and prepare backups
  - b. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software
  - c. Add new users and understand password security procedures
- E. In addition to the site specific training on the system installed, as outlined above, provide enrollment for two (2) building operators in a four (4) day course at the manufacturer's factory training center. All course tuition, course material fees and transportation to and from the training center are to be included in the proposal. Expenses for lodging and meals will be provided by others.
- F. Provide 8 hours of additional training quarterly during warranty period.
- G. The Owner may require personnel to have more comprehensive understanding of the hardware and software, additional training shall be available from the Contractor providing the work under this Section. If such training is required by the Owner, it will be contracted at a later date. Provide description in the Technical Proposal of available local and factory customer training.
- H. Provide course outline and materials in accordance with the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification. The instructor(s) shall provide one hard copy of training material per student as well as one electronic copy of all training materials to the Owner.



NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

- I. The instructor(s) shall be factory-trained instructors experienced in presenting this material.
- 3.21 Sequences of operation
- A. Sequences of Operation are shown on the Drawings.

\*\*\*\*\*END OF SECTION\*\*\*\*\*

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 231126 - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- D. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. For Piping Containing Only Vapor:
    - a. Piping and Valves: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For Piping Containing Liquid:
    - a. Piping between Shutoff Valves: 350 psig unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Piping Other Than Above: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Valves and Fittings: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. LPG System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig but not more than 5 psig and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing LPG piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging coating and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

## 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing LPG Service: Do not interrupt LPG service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of LPG supply according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of LPG service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of LPG service without Owner's written permission.

## 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground, and stainless steel underground.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
  6. Mechanical Couplings:
    - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
    - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
    - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
    - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
    - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
  2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
  5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
  6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. PE Pipe: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
  2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
    - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet.
    - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
    - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
    - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
    - e. Tracer wire connection.
    - f. Ultraviolet shield.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
- 4. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
  - a. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
  - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - c. Acetal collets.
  - d. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
- 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
  - b. PE body tube.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Acetal collets.
  - e. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- 6. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
  - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
  - d. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

### 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

#### A. Flexible Piping Joints:

- 1. Approved for LPG service.
- 2. Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
- 3. Minimum working pressure of 250 psig and 250 deg F operating temperature.
- 4. Flanged- or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and shall be capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment.
- 5. Maximum 36-inch length for liquid LPG lines.

#### B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
- 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
- 3. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
- 4. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 5. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 6. Maximum Length: 72 inches

#### C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

### 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with ASME B16.33 and UL 842.

1. CWP Rating: 250 psig.

2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.

3. Socket ends for brazed joints.

4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

5. Listing by CSA or agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.

6. Valves 1-1/4 inch and larger shall be suitable for LPG service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Vapor Service: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.

3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.

4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.

6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inch to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

7. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.

8. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.

9. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.

10. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

11. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
12. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
13. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
14. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
15. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

### D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze
3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

### E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
2. Plug: Bronze.
3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

### F. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for LPG.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
  - 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
  - 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  - 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  - 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
  - 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
  - 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  - 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
  - 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
  - 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
  - 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
  - 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.
  
- C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
  - 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
  - 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  - 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  - 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  - 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  - 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
  - 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig

### 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
  
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

### 2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off LPG to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect LPG piping according to NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.4 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Install underground, LPG piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade.
  - 1. If LPG piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, LPG piping according to ASTM D2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Joints for connection to inlets and outlets on vaporizers, air mixers, regulators, and valves may be flanged or threaded to match the equipment.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.5 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install LPG piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed LPG piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: LPG piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  2. In Floors: Install LPG piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  3. In Floor Channels: Install LPG piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install LPG piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install LPG piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

## 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

## 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for steel piping with maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- B. Install hangers for corrugated stainless-steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- D. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless-steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install LPG piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Test, inspect, and purge LPG according to NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. LPG piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.13 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground LPG liquid piping shall be one of the following:
  1. Schedule 40 steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- B. Aboveground LPG liquid piping shall be one of the following:
  1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40 steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- C. Underground LPG vapor piping shall be one of the following:
  1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat-fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Aboveground LPG vapor piping shall be one of the following:
  1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- E. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.16 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Underground Vapor Piping:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, lubricated plug valves.

### 3.17 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground Liquid Piping:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- B. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 3. Bronze plug valve.
- C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231126



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.
  - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
    - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
    - b. Solenoid valves.
    - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
    - d. Filter dryers.
    - e. Strainers.
    - f. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
  - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
  - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 4. Shop Drawing Scale: scaled as determined by contractor.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## 1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig .
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

#### A. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

#### B. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 -V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

#### C. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
7. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 450 psig.

### 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- B. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- C. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- D. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as recommended by equipment manufacturer.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
  - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
  - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
  - 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
  - 4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
  - 5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
  - 6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2 : Maximum span, 60 inches ; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8 : Maximum span, 60 inches ; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
    - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
    - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
  - D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.
- 2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS
- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
    - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
    - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
    - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
    - 4. Water resistant.
    - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
    - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
    - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
    - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
    - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
  - C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
    - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
    - 2. Type: S.
    - 3. Grade: NS.
    - 4. Class: 25.
    - 5. Use: O.
    - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- D. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- E. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines" for the basic level of cleanliness.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air, Return Air and Exhaust Air Ducts: Seal Class A.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Building Attachments: Structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.7 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel as follows:
- B. Supply Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT  
HVAC REPLACEMENT

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

D. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

END OF SECTION 233113

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Barometric relief dampers.
  - 3. Manual volume dampers.
  - 4. Fire dampers.
  - 5. Flange connectors.
  - 6. Pressure relief access doors.
  - 7. Flexible connectors.
  - 8. Duct accessory hardware.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
    - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 316.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Flex-Tek Group.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 8. Pottorff.
  - 9. Ruskin Company.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 3-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, minimum 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center or end pivoted maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. 90-degree stops.

### 2.4 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 4. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 7. Pottorff.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
  - 9. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- F. Blades:
  - 1. Multiple, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
  - 2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
  - 3. Action: Parallel.
  - 4. Balance: Gravity.
  - 5. End pivoted.
- G. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- H. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Bronze.
- L. Accessories:
  - 1. Flange on intake.
  - 2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

### 2.5 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
    - b. Greenheck
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.
    - f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
    - h. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
  - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- B. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- C. Damper Hardware:
1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

### 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Aire Technologies.
  2. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  3. Arrow United Industries.
  4. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  8. Pottorff.
  9. Prefco.
  10. Ruskin Company.
  11. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  12. Ward Industries, Inc.
- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL. Leakage classification I.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 10 gage and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

### 2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

### 2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Pressure Relief Access Door:
  - 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Door: Single wall with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
  - 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
  - 4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg.
  - 5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
  - 6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
  - 7. Latches: Cam.
  - 8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
  - 9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  - 4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F .
- G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
- H. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- I. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- J. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- K. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- L. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.
- M. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- N. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product from the following list of acceptable manufacturers:
  - 1. Thermaflex, a Flex-Tek Group company
  - 2. Flexmaster USA, Inc.
  - 3. JP Lamborn Co.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm .
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 237413 – DEDICATED OUTDOOR PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

### GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit unit performance data including capacity, nominal and operating performance.
- B. Submit Mechanical Specifications for unit and accessories describing construction, components and options.
- C. Submit drawings indicating overall dimensions as well as installation, operation and services clearances. Indicate lift points and recommendations and center of gravity. Indicate unit shipping, installation and operating weights including dimensions.
- D. Submit data on electrical requirements and connection points. Include recommended wire and fuse sizes or MCA, sequence of operation, safety and start-up instructions.
- E. Drawings submitted for approval shall be accompanied by a copy of the purchase agreement between the Contractor and an authorized service representative of the manufacturer for check, test and start up and first year service.

#### 1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.
- B. Protect units from physical damage. Leave factory shipping covers in place until installation.
- C. Units to be secured via base rail tie-down locations.

#### 1.3 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five (5) year parts and labor warranty for entire unit.

### PRODUCTS

#### 1.4 SUMMARY

- A. The contractor shall furnish and install packaged outdoor air unit(s) as shown and scheduled on the contract documents. The unit(s) shall be installed in accordance with this specification and perform at the specified conditions as scheduled.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## B. ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

1. Manufacturers: This specification is based on Trane. Cost associated with dimensional, performance, warranty, or other deviations from the specified equipment, including engineering costs to evaluate such deviations, shall be paid for by the contractor. Subject to compliance with requirements, acceptable manufacturers are:
  - a. Trane Horizon
2. Units shall be designed in accordance with AHRI-920 operating points and shall be capable of providing design supply air conditions (dry bulb and wet bulb) at all part load conditions, down to 55F ambient, and maintain 70F reheat. Demonstration point shall maintain constant 45F dew point at 60F ambient with matching entering air conditions of 60F db / 58F wb while maintaining 70 F reheat without the use of auxiliary heat in the form of gas or electric reheat.

## C. GENERAL UNIT DESCRIPTION

1. Unit(s) furnished and installed shall be packaged outdoor air unit(s) as scheduled on contract documents and described in these specifications. Unit(s) shall be designed for dehumidification, cooling and/or heating. For dehumidification and cooling modes the evaporator temperature shall be monitored, reported at unit controller. Compressor controls shall modulate capacity to maintain evaporator leaving set point. Hot Gas Bypass shall not be used to control compressor capacity. Compressor Hot Gas Reheat (HGRH) shall be factory installed. To prevent rehydration of evaporator condensate the reheat coil face shall be located a minimum of 6" downstream from the leaving face of the evaporator coil. Heating system shall include modulating controls. Compressor on-off only or primary heating on-off only controls shall not be acceptable control strategies.
2. Unit(s) shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.

## D. CABINET

1. Cabinet panels: 2" double-wall foamed panel construction throughout the indoor section of unit to provide nonporous, cleanable interior stainless steel surfaces. All interior seams exposed to airflow shall be sealed.
2. Insulation: 2" polyisocyanurate foam metal encapsulated with no exposed edges. Initial R value of 6.6 per inch of thickness.
3. Cabinet base shall be double wall construction designed to prevent trapping or ponding of water within the unit base. Cabinet base pan shall be insulated with 2" thick polyisocyanurate foam. Foam insulation shall be fully enclosed with galvanized steel insulation cover. Insulation shall not be applied to underside of unit base.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

4. Cabinet Base Rails: Side and end base rails shall include openings for forklift and tie-down access. To protect unit base from fork damage side rails shall include removable heavy gauge fork pockets.
  5. Shipping anchors attach to and/or through unit base rails. Straps over unit shall not be used to secure unit for shipping.
  6. Exterior Corrosion Protection: Exterior cabinet panels shall be a base coat of G-90 galvanized steel with exterior surfaces cleaned, phosphatized and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit's surface shall be in compliance with ASTM B45 salt spray testing at a minimum of 672 hour duration.
  7. Interior Corrosion Protection: Interior surfaces shall be a stainless steel. Cabinet shall include interior liner constructed of Type 304 stainless steel with sealed seams. All Unit Coils shall be coated. See coil coating requirements below.
  8. Cabinet construction shall provide hinged panels providing easy access for all parts requiring routine service.
  9. Cabinet top cover shall be one piece construction or where seams exist, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
  10. Hinged Access Panels: Water- and air-tight hinged access panels shall provide access to all areas requiring routine service including air filters, heating section, electrical and control cabinet sections, ERV and power exhaust fan section, supply air fan section, evaporator and reheat coil sections. Insulated doors shall be constructed to allow the hinges to be reversed in the field.
    - a. Hold-open devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access doors. Chains shall not be used as hold-open devices.
    - b. Latches with locking hasp or tool operated closure devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access panels.
  11. Drain Pan material shall be Type 430 Stainless steel drain and constructed to sloped in two directions to ensure positive drainage with corners exposed to standing water and drain fittings welded liquid tight to prevent leaks. Pan shall have a minimum depth of 2". Base of drain pan shall be insulated with 1" thick foam insulation.
  12. Provide openings either on side of unit or thru the base for power, control and gas connections.
  13. Unit shall be equipped with a 6" filter rack upstream of the evaporator. Frame shall be field-adjustable to match any filter combination specified in the following section.
- E. SUPPLY/100% EXHAUST - FANS AND MOTORS
1. Supply and Exhaust Fans shall be high efficiency backward curved impeller.
  2. All Fan motors shall be VFD rated and controlled via factory mounted VFDs for variable motor speed. (4 HP Fan motors shall be an (ECM) electronic commutated motor with integrated power electronics for variable motor speed.)
  3. Provide shafts constructed of solid hot rolled steel, ground and polished, with key-way, and protectively coated with lubricating oil.
  4. Exhaust Fans shall be capable of providing air flow at design energy recovery scheduled values, and at airflow equal to supply scheduled values in economizer mode.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### F. AIR FILTERS

1. Evaporator Inlet shall include a full compliment of pleated media air filters. Filters shall be:
  - a. 2" deep MERV 8
  - b. 4" deep MERV 13

### G. ECONOMIZER DAMPERS

1. Unit shall include a motor operated outdoor air damper constructed of galvanized steel.
2. Damper blades shall be air foil design with rubber edge seals designed not to exceed a 4 CFM/SQ FT leakage rate exceeding ASHRAE 90.1 damper leakage requirements.
3. Damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring return and either two-position or fully modulating.
4. Return Air damper shall be of same material, construction and leakage rate as outdoor air damper. Return air damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring fully modulating and operate based on outdoor air damper feedback signal to properly regulate RA airflow.

### H. DEHUMIDIFICATION/COOLING

1. Compressors
  - a. Provide dual-digital scroll type compressors – minimum 2 digital scrolls, one per circuit.
  - b. Motor shall be suction gas-cooled and shall have a voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage.
  - c. Internal overloads shall be provided with the scroll compressors.
  - d. Each compressor shall have a crankcase heater to minimize the amount of liquid refrigerant present in the oil sump during off cycles.
  - e. Each compressor shall be mounted on rubber vibration isolators, to reduce the transmission of noise.
  - f. Provide each unit with two hermetically sealed independent refrigerant circuits factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, liquid line charging port, suction and liquid line pressure ports, sight glass, and thermal expansion valve.
  - g. Shall have a minimum of two (2) independent refrigerant circuits, a minimum of 2 modulating digital scroll compressors-one for each circuit- to provide infinite modulating capacity between 5% and 100% of capacity for each circuit. Hot gas bypass is not permitted.
  - h. Compressors must be able to provide mechanical cooling down to 55 F ambient while maintaining DX Cooling Coil Leaving Air Dew Point at a constant 45 F, and, be able to provide 70 degree reheat via HGRH.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- i. Provide each circuit with automatic reset high and low pressure and high temperature switches for safety control.

## 2. Coils

- a. Evaporator, Condenser and Hot Gas Reheat coils shall be constructed with copper tubes mechanically bonded to configured aluminum plate fins.
- b. Coils shall be factory leak tested in accordance ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1992 at a minimum pressure of 500 PSIG.
- c. The condenser coil shall have a fin designed for ease of cleaning.
- d. Evaporator coil shall include (six / four) rows of cooling interlaced for superior sensible and latent cooling with a maximum of 12 FPI for ease of cleaning.
- e. Reheat coil shall be fully integrated into the supply airstream and be capable of delivering design supply air temperature.
- f. To prevent re-hydration of condensate from evaporator coil, the evaporator coil face and the hot gas reheat coil face shall be separated by a minimum of six inches.
- g. Coil Coating for condenser, evaporator, HGRH coils: Coil will have a flexible epoxy polymer e-coat uniformly applied to all coil surface areas with no material bridging between fins. The coating process will ensure complete coil encapsulation and a uniform dry film thickness from 0.6 – 1.2 mills on all surface areas including fin edges and meet 5b rating cross hatched adhesion per ASTM B3359- 93. Corrosion durability will be confirmed through testing with no less than 6,000 hours salt spray resistance per ASTM B117-90 using scribed aluminum test school coupons.
- h. The unit(s) must comply per above - spray coatings not acceptable
- i. Condenser coil hail guards shall be factory installed.

## 3. Condenser Section

- a. Outdoor Fans: Shall be direct drive vertical discharge design with low-noise corrosion resistant glass reinforced polypropylene props, powder coated wire discharge guards and electro-plated motor mounting brackets.
- b. Fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced, draw through in the vertical discharge position.
- c. Unit shall be capable of providing design supply air conditions (leaving air - dry bulb and wet bulb) during part load operation. Part Load Design point shall be demonstrated at engineer's request; down to 60F db / 58F wb ambient conditions, unit shall deliver supply air design conditions (leaving air - dry bulb and wet bulb), while maintaining 70 reheat.

## 4. Compressor Capacity Control – DUAL DIGITAL SCROLL COMPRESSORS

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Mechanical Control: shall be equipped with Dual Digital Scroll Compressors to modulate compressor capacity during part load dehumidification while providing simultaneous hot gas reheat capacity at all ambient and load conditions. The dehumidification/cooling setpoint shall be maintained at all times, as well as the reheat set point. Cycling compressor capacity or sacrificing dehumidification requirements is not an acceptable control strategy.
- b. Dual digital scroll compressors shall be provided to maintain hot gas reheat capacity at all load conditions.

### I. ELECTRICAL RATINGS AND CONNECTIONS

1. All high voltage power components such as fuses, switches and contactors shall include a service personnel protection barrier or shall be a listed as touch-safe design.
2. Field wiring access to be provided thru unit base into isolated enclosure with removable cover.
3. Power wiring to be single point connection.
4. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for identification.
5. Unit shall be factory wired to field wiring terminal block mounted in isolated enclosure.
6. Factory wired main power disconnect and overcurrent device shall be rated for total unit connected power
7. SCCR rating shall be a minimum of 65kA
8. Factory wired Voltage/Phase monitor shall be included as standard. In the event of any of the following, the units will be shut down and a fault code will be stored in the monitor for the most recent 25 faults. Upon correction of the fault condition the unit will reset and restart automatically.
  - a. Phase Unbalance Protection: Factory set 2%
  - b. Over/Under/Brown Out Voltage Protection: +/-10% of nameplate voltage
  - c. Phase Loss/Reversal
  - d. Single Phase Protection
9. Factory to mount and wire optional 120 volt convenience outlet. Field wiring of convenience outlet not acceptable.
10. All low voltage field wiring connections shall be made at factory installed low voltage terminal strip.

### J. UNIT CONTROLS

1. Main Unit Controller (MCM) shall be provided by CMI. (There shall be no control interface devices, no integration, no BacNet, and no controllers provided by the VAU manufacturer.) VAU manufacturer shall provide and factory install the following control end devices and wire all to a terminal strip, with no controller and no interface:
2. Space must be provided downstream of the unit's cooling coil for placement of the averaging temperature sensor, such that the unit can be controlled to the coil's leaving air set point,



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

continuously. Controlling the unit indirectly via suction temp or any other indirect control algorithm is not acceptable.

- a. Primary control shall be Discharge Air Control via cooling coil leaving air temperature sensor.

### 3. Factory Mounted and Wired Control Devices:

- a. Unit Manufacturer shall provide, factory install, and wire the following control points to terminal strip for CMI (Controls interface shall not be permitted):

- 1) Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor
- 2) Outdoor Air Humidity Sensor
- 3) Outdoor Air Flow Measuring Station
- 4) Outdoor Air Modulating Damper and Actuator
- 5) Outdoor Air Total Energy Wheel Modulating Bypass Damper and Actuator
- 6) Exhaust Air Total Energy Wheel Modulating Bypass Damper and Actuator
- 7) Total Energy Wheel Enable
- 8) Return Air/Mixed Air Modulating Damper and Actuator
- 9) Return Air Temperature Sensor
- 10) Return Air Humidity Sensor
- 11) Return Air Duct Pressure Sensor
- 12) Filter Differential Pressure Switch – Status
- 13) Exhaust Fan Piezometer Air Flow Station
- 14) Exhaust Fan ECM Variable Speed Fan Control
- 15) Exhaust Damper and Actuator
- 16) Exhaust Damper End Switch
- 17) Exhaust Air Temperature Sensor
- 18) 0-10 vDc Input for Single/Dual Digital Compressor Capacity Modulation
- 19) Evaporator Leaving Air Temperature Sensor
- 20) 0-10 vDc Input for Hot Gas Reheat Modulation
- 21) Supply Fan Status
- 22) Supply Fan Piezometer Air Flow Measuring Station
- 23) Supply Fan ECM Variable Speed Fan Control
- 24) Unit Leaving Air Temperature Sensor for Discharge Air Temperature.

- b. CMI shall furnish Space Temperature, Space Humidity and Co2 sensor(s) for field installation and connection to the CMI provided controller.

- c. Discharge Air Sensor: Provided with Unit, field installed by CMI.

### 4. System controls shall include:

- a. Anti-cycle timing.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

b. Minimum compressor run/off-times.

### K. POWER EXHAUST – WITH ISOLATION DAMPER

1. Provide a factory installed power exhaust assembly that shall be designed to ventilate return air to atmosphere.
2. Plenum mounted direct drive airfoil design exhaust wheel material shall be heavy gauge aluminum, welded construction and rated for up to Class III speed/pressure performance. Belt-drive and/or forward curve plenums fans shall not be used.
3. Exhaust to discharge through gravity dampers located on each side of unit cabinet.

a. Powered isolation dampers in place of barometric relief dampers

### L. OUTDOOR AIR SECTION ENERGY RECOVERY (ERV)

1. The rotor media shall be made of aluminum or polymer, formed into a honeycomb structure to minimize pressure loss and avoid plugging. Paper, plastic, Mylar, or fibrous media are not acceptable. The rotor media must be coated to resist corrosion. All surfaces must be coated with a non-migrating desiccant layer to ensure that adequate latent capacity is provided. The desiccant coating must be firmly bonded to the aluminum surface and will not be dislodged when challenged with high velocity air up to 5000 feet per minute. Products that lose desiccant when served with high velocity air are not acceptable. The cassette must be a slide out design for serviceability. The media shall be cleanable with low temperature steam, hot water or light detergent without degrading the latent recovery.
2. Sensible and latent recovery efficiencies must be clearly documented through a testing program conducted in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 84 and AHRI 1060. The testing must have been conducted by a qualified independent organization. The performance test reports must be provided for engineering review as part of the submittals for this project.
3. The rotor design shall ensure laminar airflow to minimize parasitic pressure loss and to optimize the operating efficiency of the system fans. The pressure loss across the media shall be no greater than the scheduled pressure loss values. The energy wheel shall operate effectively up to 180 degrees F.
4. The rotor media shall be permanent, with an anticipated life of 20 years. It must be tested in accordance with ASTM Standard E-84 and provide smoke and flame spread ratings of less than 25 and 50 as required by NFPA 90A and UL 1995. A copy of the ASTM E-84 test report confirming the method of test and results shall be provided with the submittal. Heat recovery wheels incorporating “throw-away” media and tested to UL900 for Class 2 filters are not acceptable.
5. The wheel manufacturer must have been producing energy recovery wheels for a minimum of ten years.
6. The rotor shall be supplied with perimeter brush seals and face contact seals to minimize air leakage and wheel bypass.
7. The rotor media shall be supported by a structural aluminum hub and aluminum reinforcing spoke system. The rotor bearings must be greaseable and provide L10 life in excess of 20 years.
8. The cassette framework shall be made of galvanized steel to prevent corrosion.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

9. The rotor must be driven by long-life polyurethane/polyester composite link belt system. The rotor/cassette shall be designed so that belt can be removed or serviced without the removal of the bearing. A 3 phase A/C gear motor shall be utilized to accommodate variable speed applications.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 1. EXAMINATION

- a. Examine areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- b. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- c. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- d. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 2. INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- a. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural slabs on grade.
- b. Provide filters with a minimum MERV 13 rating for air delivered to the occupied space.
- c. Air-handling units should not be used for temporary heating and ventilating unless expressly approved by Owner. If used during construction, see SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction" for procedures to protect HVAC system.
- d. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- e. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- f. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- g. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.
- h. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3. PIPING CONNECTIONS

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

a. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections.

b. Duct Connections:

- 1) Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- 2) Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
- 3) Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

## 4. ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- a. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- b. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- c. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- d. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1) Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2) Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 2 inches high. Indicate Panel and Circuit Number on Nameplate

## 5. CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- a. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

## 6. STARTUP SERVICE

- a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1) Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

2) Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.

3) Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits. and measure and record the following:

- a) Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
- b) Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
- c) Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- d) Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
- 4) Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a) Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b) Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
- 5) Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
- 6) Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
- 7) Verify that controls are connected and operable.
- 8) Verify that filters are installed.
- 9) Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
- 10) Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
- 11) Verify bearing lubrication.
- 12) Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
- 13) Start unit.
- 14) Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices, including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
- 15) Operate unit for run-in period.
- 16) Calibrate controls.
- 17) Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
- 18) Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
- 19) Verify operational sequence of controls.
- 20) Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a) Supply-air volume.
  - b) Relief-air flow.
  - c) Outdoor-air flow.
- b. After startup, change filters and verify bearing lubrication.
- c. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate, and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
- d. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

### 7. ADJUSTING

- a. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- c. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 8. CLEANING

- a. After completing system installation; testing, adjusting, and balancing dedicated outdoor-air unit and air-distribution systems; and completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, casings, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

## 9. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- a. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- b. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- c. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1) Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
  - 2) Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

## 10. DEMONSTRATION

- a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

## B. MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

1. Unit start-up shall be completed by an Employee of the Factory and must be a factory-certified technician.
  - a. Manufacturer must have twenty factory-authorized and factory-trained technicians within a 50-mile radius of job site.
2. The contractor shall furnish manufacturer complete submittal wiring diagrams of the package unit as applicable for field maintenance and service.

END OF SECTION 237413

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 237414 – SINGLE PACKAGE AIR-COOLED ROOF MOUNTED HEAT PUMPS WITH HGR

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Packaged air-cooled rooftop heat pump units with modulating Hot Gas Reheat (HGR).

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
  1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  3. Sound production data for all 8 octave bands.
  4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  6. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  7. Roof curbs (See Section 230548 – Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC for curb requirements).
  8. District Wide Siemens Building Automation System (BAS) provided controls. Provide and coordinate terminal strips, interfaces and wiring diagrams with BAS provider prior to bidding project.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

9. Building Automation System (BAS) interface and interoperability diagrams, written descriptions and wiring diagrams.
  10. Sequence of operations: provide both manufacturer's sequences controlling processes within unit with all setpoints and expected temperatures, pressures, damper positions indicated; and, sequences of operations indicated on the drawings with all interface requirements. Indicate what processes are controlled and monitored by manufacturer's controls and what are controlled and monitored by the BAS. Clearly indicate by different colored text or other highlighting where sequences differ from what is shown on the Drawings.
- B. Submit unit performance data including capacity, nominal and operating performance.
  - C. Submit Mechanical Specifications for unit and accessories describing construction, components and options.
  - D. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work and systems. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Submit drawings indicating overall dimensions as well as installation, operation and services clearances. Indicate lift points and recommendations and center of gravity. Indicate unit shipping, installation and operating weights including dimensions.
  - E. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring. Submit data on electrical requirements and connection points. Include recommended wire and fuse sizes or MCA, sequence of operation, safety and start-up instructions.
  - F. Drawings submitted for approval shall be accompanied by a copy of the purchase agreement between the Contractor and the service representative who is a regular employee of the manufacturer for checkup, test and start up and first year service (Service shall be provided at the manufacturer's minimum interval, and at a minimum, quarterly).
  - G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - H. Vibration Isolation Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting. Comply with the requirements of Section 230548 for seismic and wind restraint requirements. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
2. Field quality-control reports.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include in emergency and normal operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE and HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.
- B. Protect units from physical damage. Leave factory shipping covers in place until installation.
- C. Units to be secured via base rail tie-down locations.

## 1.1 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Units: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DESCRIPTION

#### A. AHRI Compliance:

1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for UNITS.
2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for UNITS.
3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for Units.
4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.

#### B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

#### C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

#### D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

#### E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

#### F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

#### G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 GENERAL

- #### A. Provide (furnish and install) packaged air-cooled rooftop heat pump HVAC units with modulating Hot Gas Reheat (HGR) as shown and scheduled on the contract documents. The unit(s) shall be

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

installed in accordance with these Contract Documents (Drawings and Specifications) and perform at the specified conditions as scheduled.

### 2.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturers: The basis of design for this project is for units as manufactured by Daikin. Manufacturer shall comply with all specifications, performance requirements listed herein, efficiencies, dimensional requirements, service, start-up, and warranties.
- B. Packaged heat pumps shall be as manufactured by one of the following (Note – basis of design units and models are listed in equipment schedules on the drawings):
  - 1. Trane
  - 2. ICP
- C. Substitution Requests: Subject to compliance with requirements, requests for substitution from alternate manufacturers proposing tier products for application on this project shall provide a complete submittal of each specific unit size a minimum 10 days prior to bid for engineer review. Submittals shall include electrical data, mechanical data, full load & part load cooling/dehumidification/reheat performance, and compliance with the specification.

### 2.4 GENERAL UNIT DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Unit(s) for dehumidification, cooling and/or heating of mixed air or 100% outdoor air. For dehumidification and cooling modes, the evaporator temperature shall be monitored, reported at unit controller and to the BAS.
- B. Compressor controls shall modulate capacity to maintain evaporator leaving air temperature set point. Hot Gas Bypass shall not be used to control compressor capacity.
- C. Hot Gas Reheat (HGR) shall be factory installed. When in heating mode, heating system shall include modulating controls.
- D. Compressor on-off only or primary heating/reheating on-off only controls shall not be acceptable control strategies.
- E. Unit(s) shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.

### 2.5 CABINET

- A. Cabinet panels: 2-inch-thick double-wall foamed panel construction throughout the indoor section of unit to provide nonporous, cleanable interior stainless-steel surfaces. All interior seams exposed to airflow shall be sealed.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Insulation: 2-inch-thick polyisocyanurate foam metal encapsulated with no exposed edges. Initial R-value of 6.6 per inch thickness.
- C. Cabinet base shall be double wall construction designed to prevent trapping or ponding of water within the unit base. Cabinet base pan shall be insulated with 2" thick polyisocyanurate foam. Foam insulation shall be fully enclosed with galvanized steel insulation cover. Insulation shall not be applied to underside of unit base.
- D. Cabinet Base Rails: Side and end base rails shall include openings for forklift and tie-down access. To protect unit base from fork damage side rails shall include removable heavy gauge fork pockets.
- E. Shipping anchors attach to and/or through unit base rails. Straps over unit shall not be used to secure unit for shipping.
- F. Exterior Corrosion Protection: Exterior cabinet panels shall be a base coat of G-90 galvanized steel with exterior surfaces cleaned, phosphatized and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit's surface coatings shall comply with ASTM B117 salt spray testing at a minimum of 1000 hour duration.
- G. Interior Corrosion Protection: Interior surfaces shall be a base coat of G-90 galvanized steel. All Unit Coils shall be coated. See coil coating requirements below.
- H. Cabinet construction shall provide hinged panels providing easy access for all parts requiring routine service.
- I. Cabinet top cover shall be one-piece construction or where seams exist, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
- J. Hinged Access Panels: Water- and air-tight hinged access panels shall provide access to all areas requiring routine service including air filters, heating section, electrical and control cabinet sections, supply air fan section, evaporator and reheat coil sections. Insulated doors shall be constructed to allow the hinges to be reversed in the field.
  - 1. Hold-open devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access doors. Chains shall not be used as hold-open devices.
  - 2. Latches with locking hasp or tool operated closure devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access panels.
- K. Drain Pan material shall be Type 304 Stainless steel drain and constructed to slope in two directions to ensure positive drainage with corners exposed to standing water and drain fittings welded liquid tight to prevent leaks. Pan shall have a minimum depth of 2 inches. Base of drain pan shall be insulated with 1-inch thick foam insulation. Provide drain pan with float switch and alarm. Float shall send a signal to the local alarm and shut down the unit upon high water condition.
- L. Provide openings thru the base for power and control connections.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- M. Unit shall be equipped with a 2-inch-deep filter rack upstream of the evaporator. Frame shall be field-adjustable to match any filter combination specified in the following section.

### 2.6 SUPPLY FANS AND MOTORS

- A. Supply Fans shall be high efficiency backward curved impeller.
- B. All Fan motors shall be an (ECM) electronic commutated motor with integrated power electronics for variable motor speed control.
- C. Condenser fans shall be direct drive with premium efficiency motors, statically and dynamically balanced, draw through in the vertical discharge position.
- D. Provide shafts constructed of solid hot rolled steel, ground and polished, with key-way, and protectively coated with lubricating oil.
- E. Fans and motors shall be internally isolated for vibration and seismic control.

### 2.7 AIR FILTERS

- A. Evaporator Inlet shall include a full complement of pleated media air filters. Filters shall be:
  - 1. 2-inch deep, pleated MERV 13

### 2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Unit shall include motor operated return and outdoor air dampers constructed of galvanized steel.
- B. Damper blades shall be air foil design with rubber edge seals designed not to exceed a 4 CFM/SQ FT leakage rate exceeding ASHRAE 90.1 damper leakage requirements.
- C. Damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring return and fully modulating.
- D. Return Air damper shall be of same material, construction and leakage rate as outdoor air damper. Return air damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring fully modulating and operate based on outdoor air damper feedback signal to properly regulate return airflow.

### 2.9 DEHUMIDIFICATION/COOLING

- A. Compressors
  - 1. Provide variable capacity scroll compressors.
  - 2. Motor shall be suction gas-cooled and shall have a voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Internal overloads shall be provided with the scroll compressors.
4. Each compressor shall have a crankcase heater to minimize the amount of liquid refrigerant present in the oil sump during off cycles.
5. Each compressor shall be mounted on rubber vibration isolators, to reduce the transmission of noise and for vibration and seismic control.
6. Provide each unit with two hermetically sealed independent refrigerant circuits factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, liquid line charging port, suction and liquid line pressure ports, sight glass, and thermal expansion valve.
7. Provide each circuit with automatic reset high and low pressure and high temperature switches for safety control.

### B. Coils

1. Evaporator, Condenser and Hot Gas Reheat coils shall be constructed with copper tubes mechanically bonded to configured aluminum plate fins.
2. Coils shall be factory leak tested in accordance ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1992 at a minimum pressure of 500 PSIG.
3. The condenser coil shall have a fin designed for ease of cleaning.
4. Evaporator coil shall include (six / four) rows of cooling interlaced for superior sensible and latent cooling with a maximum of 12 FPI for ease of cleaning.
5. Reheat coil shall be fully integrated into the supply airstream and be capable of delivering design supply air temperature.
6. To prevent re-hydration of condensate from evaporator coil, the evaporator coil face and the hot gas reheat coil face shall be separated by a minimum of 6 inches.
7. Coil Coating for condenser, evaporator, HGR coils: Provide a flexible epoxy polymer “e-coat” uniformly applied to all coil surface areas with no material bridging between fins. The coating process will ensure complete coil encapsulation and a uniform dry film thickness of 1.2 mills on all surface areas including fin edges and meet 5b rating cross hatched adhesion per ASTM B3359- 93. Corrosion durability will be confirmed through testing with no less than 6,000 hours salt spray resistance per ASTM B117-90 using scribed aluminum test coupons.
8. The unit(s) shall comply per above - spray or field applied coatings are not acceptable
9. Provide Condenser coil hail guards, factory installed.

### C. Condenser Section

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Outdoor Fans: Shall be direct drive, variable speed, vertical discharge design with low-noise corrosion resistant glass reinforced polypropylene props, powder coated wire discharge guards and electro-plated motor mounting brackets.
2. Fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced and mounted for vibration, seismic and wind control/restraint.

### D. Compressor Capacity Control

1. Mechanical Control: shall be equipped with Refrigerant Capacity Control (RCC) to modulate compressor capacity during Dehumidification or Cooling modes to maintain evaporator Dehumidification or Cooling setpoint and prevent evaporator frosting or freezing. Hot gas bypass shall not be an acceptable compressor capacity control strategy. The RCC setpoint is factory set, and field adjustable, to maintain desired suction pressure and compressor discharge pressure.
2. Unit shall be capable of maintaining 45 F DX Coil discharge air during part load dehumidification to provide enhanced dehumidification and maintain hot gas reheat capacity to meet space humidity (RH) setpoint and not over-cool the space.

## 2.10 HEATING

### A. Modulating Electric Resistance Heating System

1. Completely assembled and factory installed electric heating system shall be fully modulating, SCR controlled and listed for use in roof top handler. The heating section will include open coil heating elements, automatic and manual cut-outs, low voltage controls, air proving switch, maximum 48 amps per circuit and fusing for heaters over 48 amps. Electric heater shall be located:
  - a. In the Primary heating position located downstream of the indoor fan assembly.
  - b. In the Secondary heating position located upstream of the unit return air section and will be staged and of fin tubular type.
2. Heater shall be UL or CSA listed and approved and provide single point power connection.

## 2.11 ELECTRICAL RATINGS AND CONNECTIONS

- A. All high voltage power components such as fuses, switches and contactors shall include a service personnel protection barrier or shall be a listed as touch-safe design.
- B. Field wiring access to be provided thru unit base into isolated enclosure with removable cover.
- C. Power wiring to be single point connection.
- D. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for identification.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Unit shall be factory wired to field wiring terminal block mounted in isolated enclosure.
- F. Provide factory wired main power circuit breaker disconnect and overcurrent device shall be rated for total unit connected power.
- G. SCCR rating shall be a minimum of 65kA
- H. Factory wired Voltage/Phase monitor shall be included as standard. In the event of any of the following, the units will be shut down and a fault code will be stored in the monitor for the most recent 25 faults. Upon correction of the fault condition the unit will reset and restart automatically. Provide the following:
  - 1. Phase Unbalance Protection: Factory set 2%
  - 2. Over/Under/Brown Out Voltage Protection: +/-10% of nameplate voltage
  - 3. Phase Loss/Reversal
  - 4. Single Phase Protection
- I. Factory to mount and wire 120-volt convenience outlet. Field wiring of convenience outlet not acceptable.
- J. All low voltage field wiring connections shall be made at factory installed low voltage terminal strip.

### 2.12 UNIT CONTROLS

- A. Main Unit Control Module (MCM) shall be a Siemens Controller provided by Control Management Incorporated (CMI) and unit configuration shall be coordinated with CMI. (Control interface devices such as BacNet, Lon, etc. shall not be required)
- B. Units shall be configured as follows, depending unit type and application.
  - 1. Single-Zone VAV Heat Pump for both Mixed-Air and Active Dehumidification/HGR Reheat for Space temperature and humidity control, and Active Dehumidification/HGRH Reheat for either space temperature, humidity and CO<sub>2</sub> control and for Discharge Air Control based on Building Dew Point Sensors as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Factory Mounted and Wired Control Devices:
  - 1. Unit Manufacturer shall provide, factory install, and wire the following control points to terminal strip for CMI (Factory controls interface cards shall not be required):
    - a. Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor
    - b. Outdoor Air Humidity Sensor



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. Outdoor Air CO2 sensor.
  - d. Outdoor Air Flow Measuring Station
  - e. Outdoor Air Modulating Damper and Actuator with position indicator
  - f. Return Air/Mixed Air Modulating Damper and Actuator with position indicator
  - g. Return Air Temperature Sensor
  - h. Return Air Humidity Sensor
  - i. Return Air Duct Pressure Sensor
  - j. Return Air CO2 sensor for 100% Outdoor Air Units.
  - k. 0-10 vDc Input for Single/Dual Digital Compressor Capacity Modulation
  - l. Evaporator Leaving Air Temperature Sensor
  - m. 0-10 vDc Input for Hot Gas Reheat Modulation
  - n. Supply Fan Status
  - o. Supply Fan Piezometer Air Flow Measuring Station
  - p. Supply Fan ECM Variable Speed Fan Control
  - q. SCR Electric Heat
  - r. Mixed Air Temperature Sensor
  - s. Mixed Air Humidity Sensor
  - t. Evaporator Coil leaving air temperature
  - u. Unit Leaving Air Temperature Sensor for Discharge Air Temperature.
- 2. Space Control: CMI furnished Space Temperature, Space Humidity and Space CO2 sensor for field installation and connection to the CMI provided controller.
  - 3. Discharge Air Control for 100% outside air. CMI to provide necessary building space sensors and unit controller.
  - 4. Economizer Option includes Return Air Temperature and Humidity sensor
  - 5. Powered Exhaust with Economizer includes duct pressure sensor to be field installed.

D. System controls shall include:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Anti-cycle timing.
2. Minimum compressor run/off-times.

### 2.13 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. Unit start-up shall be completed by a regular Employee of the Unit Manufacturer and shall be a factory trained and certified technician.
  1. Manufacturer shall have twenty factory employed technicians within a 50 mile radius of job site.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of Units.
- B. Examine roughing-in for Units to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where Units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." and AHRI Guideline B. Install Units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Secure Units to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts sized by the seismic design engineer specified in Section 230548.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure Units to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections and in details on the Drawings.
- B. Connect supply ducts to Units with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- C. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
- D. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to Units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- F. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
- I. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least One Inch high.
- J. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a service representative that is a regular employee of the manufacturer to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Manufacturer shall have twenty factory employed technicians within a 50 mile radius of job site.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a manufacturer's service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing Units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 Unit Startup Service

- A. Engage a service representative who is a regular employee of the manufacturer to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and Commissioning Authority's (CxA) Pre-functional test procedures if a CxA is employed on the project.
  1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  4. Inspect internal insulation.
  5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  8. Verify that filters are installed.
  9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  10. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  11. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  12. Verify condensate drains are installed and properly trapped.
  13. Verify that all coil coatings have been provided and have not been damaged.
  14. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  15. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

16. Apply power to compressor heaters for the manufacturer's minimum time period before starting refrigeration systems.
17. Start refrigeration system.
18. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
19. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
20. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
21. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
22. Inspect operation of power vents.
23. Calibrate thermostats.
24. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
25. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke, seal and interlock with return-air dampers.
26. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb and wet bulb temperatures.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb and wet bulb temperatures.
27. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
28. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Outdoor-air intake volume.
29. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
  - d. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - e. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - f. Smoke and fire alarms.
30. Verify BAS interface, with the assistance of CMI, and confirm that all control and communication points between unit and BAS controllers is complete, BAS controller is energized and capable of providing cull control and monitoring of the units as specified in the Section 230923 and as shown on the Drawings.
31. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide manufacturer's service representative on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing Unit and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Engage service representative who is a regular employee of the manufacturer to train Owner's maintenance personnel on how to adjust, operate, and maintain Units and controls. Provide 8 hours training including written training material and field demonstration for each type of unit provided.

END OF SECTION 237414

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 237415 – SINGLE PACKAGE AIR-COOLED ROOF MOUNTED HEAT PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, General Requirements and all other Specification Sections apply to the work specified in this section. In the event of conflict between specific requirements of the various documents, the more restrictive, the more extensive (i.e.: more expensive) requirement shall govern.

#### 1.2 SCOPE

- A. The requirements of Division 23, Section “Mechanical and Electrical General Provisions” shall apply to the work specified under this section.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All building heating and air conditioning systems shall meet the mandatory provisions for HVAC performance as documented in ASHRAE 90.1-2007 Section 6.4.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. The installing contractor for any equipment shall coordinate the following items with applicable trades:
  - 1. Structural supports, curbs, and/or housekeeping pads required for all equipment.
  - 2. Ductwork connection sizes and locations. Locations shall be indicated on the installation and coordination shop drawings and final coordination shall be done on site.
  - 3. Electrical power requirements and wire/conduit and over-current protection sizes. Sizes shall be indicated on the installation and coordination shop drawings and final coordination shall be done on site.

#### 1.1 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Warranty Period for Units: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PACKAGED HEAT PUMP UNITS

- A. Packaged heat pumps shall be as manufactured by one of the following (Note – basis of design units is listed in equipment schedules on the drawings):
  1. Trane
  2. ICP
- B. The units shall be convertible airflow. The operating range shall be between 115°F and 0°F in cooling and heating as standard from the factory for units with microprocessor controls. Cooling performance shall be rated in accordance with AHRI testing procedures. All units shall be factory assembled, internally wired, fully charged with R-410A, and 100 percent run tested to check cooling operation, fan and blower rotation, and control sequence before leaving the factory. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for simplified identification. Units shall be UL listed and labeled, classified in accordance for Central Cooling Air Conditioners.
  1. Substitutions: By prior to bid approved equal.
- C. Casing
  1. Unit casing shall be constructed of G-90 zinc coated, galvanized steel. Exterior surfaces shall be cleaned, phosphatized, and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit's surface shall be tested 1000 hours in a salt spray test in compliance with ASTM B117.
  2. Cabinet construction shall allow for all maintenance on one side of the unit.
  3. Service panels shall have lifting handles and be removed and reinstalled by removing two fasteners while providing a water and airtight seal. All exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor air section shall be insulated with a cleanable foil-faced, fire-retardant permanent, odorless glass fiber material.
  4. The base of the unit shall be insulated with 1/8-inch, foil-faced, closed-cell insulation. All insulation edges shall be either captured or sealed. The unit's base pan shall have no penetrations within the perimeter of the curb other than the raised 1 1/8-inch-high down flow supply/return openings to provide an added water integrity precaution, if the condensate drain backs up. The base of the unit shall



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

have provisions for forklift and crane lifting, with forklift capabilities on three sides of the unit.

### D. Unit Top

1. The top cover shall be one-piece ribbed construction or where seams exist, it shall be outside the indoor air-conditioned section. The ribbed top is to add extra strength and prevents water from pooling on unit top.

### E. Filters

1. Factory installed filters shall mount integral within the unit and shall be accessible through access panels. Provide 2" MERV 13 filters.

### F. Compressors

1. All units shall have direct-drive, hermetic, scroll type compressors with centrifugal type oil pumps. Motor shall be suction gas-cooled and shall have a voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage. Internal overloads shall be provided with the scroll compressors. Provide suction gas cooled motor with winding temperature limits and compressor overloads.
2. Units shall have cooling capabilities down to 0-degree F as standard. For field-installed low ambient accessory, the manufacturer shall provide a factory-authorized service technician that will assure proper installation and operation.
3. Provide each unit with one thermal expansion valve per refrigerant circuit, factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, suction and liquid line pressure ports, reversing valve, discharge muffler, flow control check valve, and electronic adaptive demand defrost control on all units.

### G. Controls

1. Unit shall be completely factory-wired with necessary controls and contactor pressure lugs or terminal block for power wiring. Unit shall be provided circuit breaker disconnect device sized to match the load requirements of the unit.
2. Units shall have single point power entry as standard, and controls interface terminal strip for connection to Siemens Building Automation System (BAS) Controller provided by Control Management, Inc. (CMI).

### H. Evaporator and Condenser Coils

1. Internally finned, 5/16" copper tubes mechanically bonded to a configured aluminum plate fin shall be standard.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Coils shall be leak tested at the factory to ensure the pressure integrity. The evaporator coil and condenser coil shall be leak tested to 600 psig. The assembled unit shall be leak tested to 465 psig.
  3. A stainless steel, dual-sloped, removable and reversible condensate drain pan with through-the base condensate drain shall be provided. Provide drain pan with float switch and alarm. Float shall send a signal to the local alarm and shut down the unit upon high water condition.
  4. Provide corrosion resistant seacoast coating on condenser coils.
- I. High Pressure Control
1. All units include High Pressure Cutout as standard.
- J. Indoor Fan/Motor
1. All indoor fan motors meet the U.S. Energy Policy Act of 1992 (EPACT). Provide evaporator fan section with forward curved, double width, double inlet, centrifugal type fan. Provide self-aligning, grease lubricated, ball or sleeve bearings with permanent lubrication fittings.
  2. Provide units 5 tons and below with direct drive, multiple speed, dynamically balanced supply fans. Provide units 6 tons and above with belt driven, supply fans with adjustable motor sheaves.
- K. Phase Monitoring Protection
1. Provide units with 3-phase power monitoring protection as standard.
- L. Refrigerant Circuits
1. Provide each refrigerant circuit with thermal expansion valve as standard. Service pressure ports, and refrigerant line filter driers are factory-installed as standard. An area shall be provided for replacement suction line driers.
  2. Provide reversing valve, discharge muffler, flow control check valve, and electronic adaptive demand defrost controller on all units.
- M. Electric Heaters
1. Provide electric heat modules with staged controller within basic unit. Electric heater elements shall be constructed of heavy-duty nickel chromium elements internally connected for voltage indicated on equipment schedules. Each heater package shall have automatically reset high limit control operating through heating element contactors. All heaters shall be individually fused from the factory, where required, and shall meet all NEC and CEC requirements when properly installed.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

Power assemblies shall provide single point connection. Electric heat modules shall be UL listed.

## 1.1 UNIT CONTROLS

- A. Main Unit Control Module (MCM) shall be a Siemens Controller provided by Control Management Incorporated (CMI) and unit configuration shall be coordinated with CMI. (Control interface devices such as BacNet, Lon, etc. shall not be required)
- B. Units shall be configured as follows, depending unit type and application.
  - 1. Single-Zone VAV Heat Pump for Space temperature control as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Factory Mounted and Wired Control Devices:
  - 1. Unit Manufacturer shall provide, factory install, and wire the following control points to terminal strip for CMI (Factory controls interface cards shall not be required):
    - a. Evaporator Leaving Air Temperature Sensor
    - b. Supply Fan Status
    - c. Unit Leaving Air Temperature Sensor for Discharge Air Temperature.
  - 2. Space Control: CMI furnished Space Temperature, Space Humidity and Space CO2 sensor for field installation and connection to the CMI provided controller.
- D. System controls shall include:
  - 1. Anti-cycle timing.
  - 2. Minimum compressor run/off-times.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of Units.
- B. Examine roughing-in for Units to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where Units will be installed.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." and AHRI Guideline B. Install Units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in SECTION 230548 – “Vibration And Seismic Controls For HVAC.” Secure Units to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts sized by the seismic design engineer specified in Section 230548.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Secure Units to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections and with the details on the Drawings. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts.
- B. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to Units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- D. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
- G. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least One Inch high.
- H. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a service representative that is a regular employee of the manufacturer to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Manufacturer shall have twenty factory employed technicians within a 50-mile radius of job site.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a manufacturer's service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing Units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 5. Unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a service representative who is a regular employee of the manufacturer to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and Commissioning Authority's (CxA) Pre-functional test procedures if a CxA is employed on the project.
  - 1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 4. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
11. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
12. Verify condensate drains are installed and properly trapped.
13. Verify that all coil coatings have been provided and have not been damaged.
14. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
15. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
16. Apply power to compressor heaters for the manufacturer's minimum time period before starting refrigeration systems.
17. Start refrigeration system.
18. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
19. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
20. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
21. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
22. Inspect operation of power vents.
23. Calibrate thermostats.
24. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
25. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke, seal and interlock with return-air dampers.
26. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb and wet bulb temperatures.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb and wet bulb temperatures.
27. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
28. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
- a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
29. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
- a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
  - c. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
  - d. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - e. Smoke and fire alarms.
30. Verify BAS interface, with the assistance of CMI, and confirm that all control and communication points between unit and BAS controllers is complete, BAS controller is energized and capable of providing full control and monitoring of the units as specified in the Section 230923 and as shown on the Drawings.
31. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide manufacturer's service representative on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing Unit and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Engage service representative who is a regular employee of the manufacturer to train Owner's maintenance personnel on how to adjust, operate, and maintain Units and controls. Provide 8 hours training including written training material and field demonstration for each type of unit provided.

END OF SECTION 237415



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 237433 - DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-assembled, dedicated outdoor air-handling units, including multiple components, capable of heating and cooling 100 percent outdoor air.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS:

- A. ECM: Electronically commutated motor.
- B. IS COP: Integrated Seasonal Coefficient of Performance.
- C. ISMRE: Integrated Seasonal Moisture Removal Efficiency.
- D. MRC: Moisture Removal Capacity.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each dedicated outdoor-air unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  - 5. Fans:
    - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
    - c. Fan construction and accessories.
    - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
  - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
  - 8. Include heat exchangers with performance characteristics.
  - 9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Shop Drawings: For each dedicated outdoor-air unit.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dedicated outdoor-air-unit supports indicated to comply with performance and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators seismic restraints and wind restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 2. Wind- and Seismic-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.
  - 3. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor/roof plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for dedicated outdoor-air units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  - 4. Restraint of internal components.
- D. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control reports.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- F. Startup service reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dedicated outdoor-air units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: Two set(s) for each unit.
  - 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of dedicated outdoor-air units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Dedicated Outdoor-Air-Handling Units: Entire unit five years Parts & Labor

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an "NRTL" (nationally recognized testing laboratory), and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 34 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. ASHRAE 84 Compliance: Comply with capacity ratings for heat-wheel energy-recovery equipment.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### G. UL Compliance:

1. Electric Coils: Comply with requirements in UL 1995.

### H. Seismic Performance: Units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

### I. Wind-Restraint Performance:

1. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC for requirements.

## 2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

### A. Supply-Air Fan:

1. Type: As scheduled.
2. Class: AMCA 99.
3. Airflow: As scheduled.
4. External Static Pressure: As scheduled.
5. Motor Characteristics: As scheduled

### B. Relief (Exhaust)-Air Fan:

1. Type: As scheduled.
2. Class: AMCA 99.
3. Airflow: As scheduled.
4. External Static Pressure: As scheduled.
5. Motor Characteristics: As scheduled.

### C. Condenser-Air Fan:

1. Motor Characteristics:
  - a. Motor Speed: ECM.

### D. Refrigerant Cooling Coil:

1. Capacity: As scheduled.

### E. Hot-Gas Reheat Coil: As scheduled.

### F. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: As scheduled.

### G. Rotary Heat Exchanger (Not applicable to all units – see schedules on Drawings): As scheduled.

### H. Filters:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Type: Panel.
2. Depth: 2 inches.
3. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value:
  - a. MERV Rating: MERV 8, in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

I. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Point Connection: As scheduled.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. Trane Horizon

B. Substitution Requests: Subject to compliance with requirements, requests for substitution from alternate manufacturers proposing tier products for application on this project shall provide a complete submittal of each specific unit size a minimum 10 days prior to bid for engineer review. Submittals shall include electrical data, mechanical data, full load & part load cooling/dehumidification/reheat performance, and compliance with the specification.

### 2.4 UNIT CASING

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.

B. Configuration: Horizontal unit with bottom discharge for roof-mounting installation.

C. Double-Wall Configuration:

1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick with manufacturer's standard finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
2. Inside Casing Wall:
  - a. Inside Casing, All Other Sections: Galvanized steel, solid.
3. Floor Plate: Reinforced metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation is provided below metal walking surface.
4. Roof: Standing seam or membrane; sloped to drain water.
5. Casing Insulation:
  - a. Materials: Polyurethane foam insulation.
  - b. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-11 minimum.
  - c. Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.
  - d. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.

D. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### E. Static-Pressure Classifications:

1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 4 inches wg.
2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 4 inches wg.

### F. Panels and Doors:

#### 1. Panels:

- a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
- b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock-type fasteners for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow
- c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
- d. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of unit's internal components

#### 2. Doors:

- a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
- b. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
- c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
- d. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.

#### 3. Locations and Applications:

- a. Fan Section: Doors.
- b. Access Section: Doors.
- c. Damper Section: Doors.
- d. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
- e. Relief Section: Doors.

### G. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Location: Each refrigerant coil and rotary heat exchanger.
2. Construction:
  - a. Double-wall, stainless steel sheet.
3. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from cooling coils, including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends.
4. Drain Connection:
  - a. Located on both ends of pan, at lowest point of pan.
  - b. Terminated with threaded nipple.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

- c. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
5. Slope: Minimum 0.125-inch/ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
6. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Width: Entire width of water-producing device.
8. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
9. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
10. Provide units having stacked coils with intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

### 2.5 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Supply-Air Fans and Relief-Air Fans: Centrifugal; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
  2. Shaft Bearings:
    - a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours in accordance with ABMA 9.
  3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
    - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  4. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
  5. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation and seismic control. Factory mount fans with manufacturer's standard restrained vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
  6. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
  7. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches Insert dimension wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
    - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted direct drive.
- D. Condenser-Coil Fan: Variable-speed propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated electronically commutated motors.
- E. Motors:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 3. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - 4. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - 5. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - 6. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
  - 7. Mount unit-mounted circuit breaker disconnect switches on interior of unit.
- F. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Serving each fan individually in fan array.
  - 1. Manufactured Units: Pulse-width modulated; constant torque and variable torque for inverter-duty motors.
  - 2. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 66 Hz, with torque constant as speed changes; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
  - 3. Unit Operating Requirements:
    - a. Internal Adjustability:
      - 1) Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
      - 2) Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
      - 3) Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
      - 4) Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
      - 5) Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
    - b. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
      - 1) Surge suppression.
      - 2) Loss of input signal protection.
      - 3) Under- and overvoltage trips.
      - 4) Variable-frequency motor controller and motor-overload/overtemperature protection.
      - 5) Critical frequency rejection.
      - 6) Loss-of-phase protection.
      - 7) Reverse-phase protection.
      - 8) Motor-overtemperature fault.
    - c. Bidirectional autospeed search.
    - d. Torque boost.
    - e. Motor temperature compensation at slow speeds.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- 1) Panel-mounted operator station.
  - 2) Historical logging information and displays.
  - 3) Digital indicating devices.
- f. Control Signal Interface: Electric.
  - g. Proportional Integral Directive (PID) control interface.
  - h. DDC system for HVAC Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135.
4. Line Conditioning:
- a. Input line conditioning.
  - b. Output filtering.
  - c. EMI/RFI filtering.

### 2.6 COILS

#### A. General Requirements for Coils:

1. Comply with AHRI 410.
2. Fabricate coils section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. Coils are not to act as structural component of unit.

#### B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coils:

1. Tubes: Copper.
2. Fins:
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
5. Frames: Stainless steel.
6. Coatings: Corrosion-resistant coating.
7. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated in accordance with ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

#### C. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coils:

1. Tubes: Copper.
2. Fins:
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
5. Frames: Stainless steel.
6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated in accordance with ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

7. Coating: Corrosion-resistant coating.
8. Suction-discharge bypass valve.

### D. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Comply with UL 1995.

1. Casing Assembly: Slip-in type with galvanized-steel frame.
2. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
3. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.
4. Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.
5. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection.
  - a. Magnetic contactor.
  - b. Solid-state, stepless pulse controller.
  - c. Toggle switches, one per step.
  - d. SCR controller.
  - e. Time-delay relay.
  - f. Pilot lights, one per step.
  - g. Airflow proving switch.

### E. Condenser Refrigerant coils:

1. Tube Material: Copper.
2. Fin Material: Aluminum.
3. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
4. Coating: Corrosion-resistant.

## 2.7 REFRIGERATION CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressors: Hermetic, variable-speed scroll compressors, mounted on integral vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- B. Refrigerant: R-410A.
- C. Refrigeration Specialties:
  1. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  2. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  3. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  4. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  5. Minimum off-time relay.
  6. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  7. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient-temperature operation or loss of air.
  8. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

10. Single compressor with evaporator and condenser coil within the refrigerant section to provide initial pre-cooling and to reheat for humidity control.
11. Modulating hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
12. Heat-pipe heat exchanger, wrapped around the evaporator coil to pre-cool the air entering the evaporator coil and reheat the air leaving the evaporator coil to control humidity.
13. Hot-gas bypass refrigerant control for capacity control with continuous dehumidification for single-speed compressor.

### 2.8 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."
- B. Panel Filters:
  1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filters with holding frames.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  4. Filter-Media Frame: High wet-strength beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
- C. Mounting Frames:
  1. Panel filters arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or from access plenum.
  2. Cartridge filters arranged for flat orientation, removable from access plenum.
  3. Galvanized or stainless steel with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks with space for prefilter.

### 2.9 ROTARY HEAT EXCHANGER

- A. Casing:
  1. Galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum with manufacturer's standard factory-painted finish.
  2. Integral purge section limiting carryover of exhaust air to between 0.05 percent at 1.6-inch wg and 0.20 percent at 4-inch wg differential pressure.
  3. Casing seals on periphery of rotor and on duct divider and purge section.
  4. Support vertical rotor on grease-lubricated ball bearings having extended grease fittings or permanently lubricated bearings. Support horizontal rotors on tapered roller bearings.
- B. Rotor - Aluminum, Metallic, or Polymer: Aluminum, metallic, or polymer segmented wheel, strengthened with radial spokes impregnated with nonmigrating, water-selective, molecular-sieve desiccant coating.
- C. Drive: Fractional horsepower motor and gear reducer, with speed changed by variable-frequency controller. Provide permanently lubricated wheel bearings.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

### D. Controls:

1. Starting relay, factory mounted and wired, and manual motor starter for field wiring.
2. Variable-frequency controller, factory mounted and wired, permitting input of 4-20 mA or 1-10 V control signal.
3. Control energy recovery to permit air economizer operation.
  - a. Bypass dampers to assist energy recovery control.
4. Pilot-Light Indicator: Display rotor rotation and speed.
5. Speed Settings: Adjustable settings for maximum and minimum rotor speed limits.
6. Integral purge section limiting carryover of exhaust air to between 0.05 percent at 1.6-inch wg and 0.20 percent at 4-inch wg differential pressure.
7. Defrost cycle.

### 2.10 DAMPERS

#### A. Dampers: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."

#### B. Outdoor- and Relief-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed or parallel-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1 inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4 inches wg.

#### C. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."

#### D. Electronic Damper Operators:

1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percentage of travel and 2 to 10 V dc feedback signal.
3. Operator Motors:
  - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
  - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - e. Dampers with 2 to 3 Inches wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
  - f. Dampers with 3 to 4 Inches wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  10. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V dc.
  11. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
  12. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2 to 10 V dc position feedback signal.
  13. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
  14. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

### 2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Single-Point Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.
- B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R, mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key.
- C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
- D. Wiring Location: Install factory wiring outside an enclosure in a raceway.
- E. Power Interface: Field power interface to be factory mounted circuit breaker disconnect switch.
- F. Factory Wiring: Branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:
  1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection in accordance with IEC 60947-4-1.
  2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
  3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
- G. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.
- H. Transformer: Factory mounted with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.
- I. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Service Lights: [LED] vaporproof luminaire with individual switched junction box located inside, adjacent to each access door and panel.
    - a. Locations: Each section accessed with door or panel.
  2. Convenience Outlets: One 20 A duplex GFCI receptacle per location with junction box located on outside casing wall.
- J. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

### 2.12 CONTROLS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for control equipment and sequence of operation.
- B. Main Unit Control Module (MCM) shall be a Siemens BAS Controller provided by Control Management Incorporated (CMI) and unit configuration shall be coordinated with CMI. Coordinate control interface with CMI prior to bidding the project.
- C. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.
- D. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions. Coordinate with CMI prior to bidding the project.
- E. Refrigeration System Controls:
  1. Enthalpy controller shall lock out refrigerant system when outdoor-air enthalpy is less than 28 Btu/lb of dry air or outdoor-air temperature is less than 60 deg F.
- F. Rotary Heat-Exchanger Control:
  1. Sequence with refrigeration system controls and heating controls.
  2. For operation of rotary heat exchanger itself, see "Rotary Heat Exchanger" Article.
- G. Electric-Resistance Heat Controls:
  1. Remote sensor for field installation in supply-air duct with sensor adjustment located in control panel to control electric coil to maintain temperature.
  2. Capacity Controls: Modulating SCR.
- H. Damper Controls: Space-pressure sensor modulates outdoor- and relief-air dampers to maintain a positive pressure in space at a minimum of 0.05 inch wg with respect to outdoor reference.
- I. DDC Temperature Control: Standalone control module for link between unit controls and DDC temperature-control system. Control module shall be compatible with control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC." Links shall include the following:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Start/stop interface relay and relay to notify DDC temperature-control system alarm condition.
  2. Hardware interface or additional sensors for the following:
    - a. Room temperature.
    - b. Discharge-air temperature.
    - c. Refrigeration system operation.
    - d. Electric heat operation.
- J. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, and display unit status and alarms.
1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm.
    - b. Control: On-off operation, supply temperature set-point adjustment space humidity set-point adjustment space pressure set-point adjustment.
  2. CMI approved communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the DDC system for HVAC operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC. Coordinate with CMI prior to bidding the project.

### 2.13 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind restraints are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Curb Dimensions: Height of 24 inches.
- C. Wind and Seismic Restraints: Metal brackets compatible with the curb and casing, painted to match unit, used to anchor unit to the curb, and designed for loads at Project site. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for wind-load requirements.

### 2.14 INTAKE AND RELIEF OPENINGS

- A. Type: Manufacturer's standard hood or louver, including moisture eliminator, at all unit intake and relief openings.
- B. Materials: Match material and finish of casing exterior.
- C. Bird Screen: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Configuration: Designed to inhibit wind-driven rain and snow from entering unit.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.15 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- E. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating.
- F. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat casing coils and fan guards with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a minimum of 3,000-hour salt-spray test in accordance with ASTM B117.
  - 1. Standards:
    - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
    - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
    - c. ASTM D3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.
  - 2. Application: Immersion.
  - 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
  - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 50 gloss units on a single angle 60-degree meter.

## 2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 920: Manufacturer to certify that performance ratings are in accordance with AHRI 920 if AHRI 920 certification program is not in place. Provide AHRI 920 certification if AHRI 920 certification program is in place.
- B. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Certification: Test and rate air-handling unit fan sound ratings in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA Publication 311.
- C. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency.
  - 1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 211.
- D. Damper Leakage and Air Performance: Factory test dampers for leakage and air performance.
  - 1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 511.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- F. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 300 psig internal pressure and to minimum 300 psig internal pressure while under water, in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, in accordance with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual." Install units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Secure units to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of curbs with actual equipment provided.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- D. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- F. Comply with requirements for gas-fired furnace installation in NFPA 54.
- G. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- H. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections.
- B. Duct Connections:
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
  - 2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
  - 3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 2 inches high. Indicate Panel and Circuit Number on Nameplate

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
3. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits. and measure and record the following:
  - a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
4. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
5. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
10. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
11. Verify bearing lubrication.
12. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
13. Start unit.
14. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices, including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
15. Operate unit for run-in period.
16. Calibrate controls.
17. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
18. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
19. Verify operational sequence of controls.
20. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Relief-air flow.
  - c. Outdoor-air flow.

- B. After startup, change filters and verify bearing lubrication.
- C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate, and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
- D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation; testing, adjusting, and balancing dedicated outdoor-air unit and air-distribution systems; and completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, casings, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
  - 2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 237433

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
  2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## 1.1 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period for Units: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  3. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Trane
  2. ICP

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

### A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Double walled foamed insulation system.
3. Refrigerant Coil: All aluminum coil.
4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
5. Fan: Direct drive centrifugal.
6. Fan Motors:
  - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Multitapped, multispeed ECM with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Filters: One inch thick, pleated, disposable, MERV 8.
9. Disconnect: Provide factory installed motor rated switch disconnect.
  - a. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
    - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
    - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
  - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
  - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
    - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
  - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

### B. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans, integral condensate pump with drain connection and motor rated switch disconnect.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
  - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Multitapped, multispeed ECM with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
6. Disconnect: Provide factory installed motor rated switch disconnect.
  - a. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Condensate Drain Pans:
  - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
    - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
    - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
  - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
  - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
    - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
  - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
9. Pipe drain pans into integral, factory installed condensate pump.
10. Air Filtration Section: Permeant, cleanable.
  - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
    - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
    - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
    - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT

## HVAC REPLACEMENT

### 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

#### A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
  - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
  - c. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  - d. Refrigerant Coil: All aluminum with Seacoast coating.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

### 2.4 ACCESSORIES

#### A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."

#### B. Thermostat:

1. For Split system heat pumps with concealed cabinet air handling units: Thermostat and controller provided by District Wide Siemens Building Automation System (BAS) provider. Unit provider to coordinate wiring and terminal strip requirements with BAS provider.
2. For ductless split system heat pumps and air conditioning units: Thermostat - unit manufacturer's standard wall mounted thermostat. BAS provider to provide a temperature sensor connected to BAS front end in the room where wall mounted ductless air handler is located to monitor system performance.
  - a. Compressor time delay.
  - b. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
  - c. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
  - d. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

#### C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

#### D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Drain Hose: For condensate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in SECTION 230548 – “VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC.” Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless steel fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install and connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  2. Type XHHW: Comply with UL 44.
- E. Multiconductor Cable: Type AC with ground wire.
1. Comply with UL 4.
- 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES
- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.
- 2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS
- A. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.
- 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS
- A. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
- A. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
    - a. All air handling equipment.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
  2. Results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 260519

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

#### 2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- C. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- D. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 3. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 4. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 5. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Water Heater: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- C. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
  - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- D. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- E. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
  - 2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Expansion Fittings: Steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- F. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

### 2.2 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- D. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- E. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- F. Cabinets:
  1. NEMA 250, Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
  3. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  4. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- E. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- H. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- I. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- J. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- K. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- L. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- M. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- N. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- P. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Q. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- R. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
- S. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to top of box unless otherwise indicated.
- T. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- U. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- V. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- W. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification for raceways.
  - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
  - 3. Warning labels and signs.
  - 4. Instruction signs.
  - 5. Equipment identification labels.
  - 6. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.



# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- C. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

### 2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.
- B. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

### 2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
- C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 2.4 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
  - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

## 2.6 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- E. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

END OF SECTION 260553

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

# NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Environmental Limitations:

- 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

### B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

- 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
- 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

### C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

- 1. Notify Engineer and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
- 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
- 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 7. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
    - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
- G. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
5. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

### I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

### J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

### K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.

### L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

### A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.



## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2.

### 2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Square D or prior approved equal.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.

### 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. MCCB Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
    - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
    - f. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.

### 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

### 2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

- F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- I. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- K. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- L. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

### C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

### D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Do not perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
  - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Instruments and Equipment:
    - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

### E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

### A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

### B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.

## NORTH MYRTLE BEACH MIDDLE SCHOOL HVAC REPLACEMENT HVAC REPLACEMENT

3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416